Chapter 3. Programming Model

Introduction .................................................................................................................. 3–1
General-Purpose Registers .......................................................................................... 3–1
Control Registers ........................................................................................................... 3–2
Operating Modes .......................................................................................................... 3–4
Normal Mode .................................................................................................................... 3–5
Debug Mode .................................................................................................................... 3–5
Changing Modes ............................................................................................................. 3–5
Exception Processing ...................................................................................................... 3–5
Exception Types .............................................................................................................. 3–6
Determining the Cause of Exceptions .......................................................................... 3–9
Nested Exceptions ......................................................................................................... 3–10
Returning from an Exception ......................................................................................... 3–10
Break Processing ........................................................................................................... 3–11
Processing a Break ........................................................................................................ 3–11
Returning from a Break ................................................................................................ 3–11
Register Usage .............................................................................................................. 3–11
Memory & Peripheral Access ......................................................................................... 3–12
Addressing Modes ........................................................................................................ 3–12
Cache Memory ................................................................................................................ 3–12
Processor Reset State ................................................................................................... 3–13
Instruction Set Categories ............................................................................................ 3–14
Data Transfer Instructions ............................................................................................ 3–14
Arithmetic & Logical Instructions ................................................................................ 3–16
Move Instructions .......................................................................................................... 3–17
Comparison Instructions ............................................................................................... 3–17
Shift & Rotate Instructions ........................................................................................... 3–18
Program Control Instructions ....................................................................................... 3–19
Other Control Instructions ........................................................................................... 3–20
Custom Instructions ....................................................................................................... 3–20
No-Operation Instruction ............................................................................................. 3–20
Potential Unimplemented Instructions ......................................................................... 3–21
Document Revision History ......................................................................................... 3–21
### Chapter 4. Implementing the Nios II Processor in SOPC Builder

- **Introduction** ................................................................. 4–1
- **Nios II Core Tab** ............................................................... 4–2
  - **Core Setting** ................................................................. 4–2
  - **Multiply & Divide Settings** ............................................ 4–3
- **Caches & Tightly Coupled Memories Tab** .......................... 4–4
  - **Instruction Settings** ................................................... 4–4
  - **Data Settings** .............................................................. 4–5
- **Advanced Features Tab** .................................................. 4–5
- **JTAG Debug Module Tab** ................................................. 4–6
  - **Debug Level Settings** .................................................. 4–8
  - **On-Chip Trace Buffer Settings** ..................................... 4–9
- **Custom Instructions Tab** .................................................. 4–10
  - **Floating-Point Custom Instructions** ............................... 4–10
  - **Interrupt Vector Custom Instruction** ............................. 4–12
- **System-Dependent Nios II Processor Settings** ...................... 4–12
  - **Reset Address** ............................................................ 4–13
  - **Exception Address** ..................................................... 4–14
  - **Break Location** ........................................................... 4–14
- **Document Revision History** ............................................. 4–15

### Section II. Appendixes

### Chapter 5. Nios II Core Implementation Details

- **Introduction** ................................................................. 5–1
- **Device Family Support** ................................................... 5–2
- **Nios II/f Core** ................................................................. 5–3
  - **Overview** ................................................................. 5–3
  - **Register File** .............................................................. 5–4
  - **Arithmetic Logic Unit** ................................................ 5–4
  - **Memory Access** .......................................................... 5–6
  - **Tightly Coupled Memory** ............................................ 5–8
  - **Execution Pipeline** ..................................................... 5–8
  - **Instruction Performance** ............................................ 5–10
  - **Exception Handling** .................................................. 5–11
  - **JTAG Debug Module** .................................................. 5–12
  - **Unsupported Features** ................................................ 5–12
- **Nios II/s Core** ................................................................. 5–12
  - **Overview** ................................................................. 5–12
  - **Register File** .............................................................. 5–13
  - **Arithmetic Logic Unit** ................................................ 5–13
  - **Memory Access** .......................................................... 5–14
  - **Tightly Coupled Memory** ............................................ 5–15
  - **Execution Pipeline** ..................................................... 5–16
  - **Instruction Performance** ............................................ 5–17
## Contents

Exception Handling ......................................................................................................................... 5–18
JTAG Debug Module ....................................................................................................................... 5–18
Unsupported Features .................................................................................................................... 5–18
Nios II/e Core ................................................................................................................................. 5–18
  Overview .................................................................................................................................. 5–19
  Register File ............................................................................................................................. 5–19
  Arithmetic Logic Unit ............................................................................................................... 5–19
  Memory Access ......................................................................................................................... 5–19
  Instruction Execution Stages .................................................................................................. 5–20
  Instruction Performance ......................................................................................................... 5–20
Exception Handling ....................................................................................................................... 5–21
JTAG Debug Module .................................................................................................................... 5–21
Unsupported Features ................................................................................................................... 5–21
Document Revision History .......................................................................................................... 5–21

### Chapter 6. Nios II Processor Revision History

Introduction .................................................................................................................................... 6–1
Nios II Versions ............................................................................................................................... 6–1
Architecture Revisions .................................................................................................................. 6–2
Core Revisions ............................................................................................................................. 6–3
  Nios II/f Core .......................................................................................................................... 6–3
  Nios II/s Core .......................................................................................................................... 6–5
  Nios II/e Core .......................................................................................................................... 6–6
JTAG Debug Module Revisions .................................................................................................... 6–6
Document Revision History .......................................................................................................... 6–8

### Chapter 7. Application Binary Interface

Data Types ...................................................................................................................................... 7–1
Memory Alignment ........................................................................................................................ 7–1
Register Usage ............................................................................................................................... 7–2
Stacks ......................................................................................................................................... 7–3
  Frame Pointer Elimination ..................................................................................................... 7–4
  Call Saved Registers .............................................................................................................. 7–4
  Further Examples of Stacks .................................................................................................... 7–5
  Function Prologs ...................................................................................................................... 7–6
Arguments & Return Values ......................................................................................................... 7–8
  Arguments ............................................................................................................................... 7–8
  Return Values .......................................................................................................................... 7–8
Document Revision History .......................................................................................................... 7–10

### Chapter 8. Instruction Set Reference

Introduction .................................................................................................................................... 8–1
Word Formats ............................................................................................................................... 8–1
  I-Type ....................................................................................................................................... 8–1
  R-Type .................................................................................................................................. 8–2
  J-Type ....................................................................................................................................... 8–3
Instruction Opcodes ....................................................................................................................... 8–4
## Contents

- Assembler Pseudo-instructions ........................................................................................................... 8–6
- Assembler Macros .......................................................................................................................... 8–7
- Instruction Set Reference ............................................................................................................... 8–8
- Document Revision History ......................................................................................................... 8–103
The chapters in this book, *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook*, were revised on the following dates. Where chapters or groups of chapters are available separately, part numbers are listed.

Chapter 1. Introduction  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51001-6.1.0*

Chapter 2. Processor Architecture  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51002-6.1.0*

Chapter 3. Programming Model  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51003-6.1.0*

Chapter 4. Implementing the Nios II Processor in SOPC Builder  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51004-6.1.0*

Chapter 5. Nios II Core Implementation Details  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51015-6.1.0*

Chapter 6. Nios II Processor Revision History  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51018-6.1.0*

Chapter 7. Application Binary Interface  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51016-6.1.0*

Chapter 8. Instruction Set Reference  
Revised: *November 2006*  
Part number: *NII51017-6.1.0*
About This Handbook

Introduction

The handbook you are holding (the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook) is the primary reference for the Nios® II family of embedded processors. This handbook answers the question “What is the Nios II processor?” from a high-level conceptual description to the low-level details of implementation. The chapters in this handbook define the Nios II processor architecture, the programming model, the instruction set, and more.

This handbook is part of a larger collection of documents covering the Nios II processor and its usage. See “How to Find Further Information”.

Assumptions about the Reader

This handbook assumes you have a basic familiarity with embedded processor concepts. You do not need to be familiar with any specific Altera® technology or with Altera development tools. This handbook was written intentionally to minimize discussion of hardware implementation details of the processor system. That said, the Nios II processor was designed for Altera field programmable gate array (FPGA) devices, and FPGA implementation concepts will inevitably arise from time to time. While familiarity with FPGA technology is not required, it may give you a deeper understanding of the engineering tradeoffs that went into the design and implementation of the Nios II processor.
How to Find Further Information

This handbook is one part of the complete Nios II processor documentation. The following references are also available.

- The *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook* (this handbook) defines the basic processor architecture and features.
- The *Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook* describes the software development environment, and discusses application programming for the Nios II processor.
- The *Quartus II Handbook, Volume 5: Embedded Peripherals* discusses Altera-provided peripherals and Nios II drivers which are included with the Quartus® II software.
- The Nios II integrated development environment (IDE) provides tutorials and complete reference for using the features of the graphical user interface. The help system is available after launching the Nios II IDE.
- Altera’s on-line solutions database is an internet resource that offers solutions to frequently asked questions via an easy-to-use search engine. Go to the support center on www.altera.com and click on the Find Answers link.
- Altera application notes and tutorials offer step-by-step instructions on using the Nios II processor for a specific application or purpose. These documents are often installed with Altera development kits, or can be obtained online from www.altera.com.

How to Contact Altera

For the most up-to-date information about Altera products, go to the Altera world-wide web site at www.altera.com. For technical support on this product, go to www.altera.com/mysupport. For additional information about Altera products, consult the sources shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information Type</th>
<th>USA &amp; Canada</th>
<th>All Other Locations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(800) 800-EPLD (3753) (7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. Pacific Time)</td>
<td>+1 408-544-8767 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. (GMT -8:00) Pacific Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product literature</td>
<td><a href="http://www.altera.com">www.altera.com</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.altera.com">www.altera.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altera literature services</td>
<td><a href="mailto:literature@altera.com">literature@altera.com</a></td>
<td><a href="mailto:literature@altera.com">literature@altera.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-technical customer service</td>
<td>(800) 767-3753</td>
<td>+ 1 408-544-7000 7:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. (GMT -8:00) Pacific Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP site</td>
<td>ftp.altera.com</td>
<td>ftp.altera.com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Typographical Conventions

This document uses the typographic conventions shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Cue</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bold Type with Initial Capital Letters</strong></td>
<td>Command names, dialog box titles, checkbox options, and dialog box options are shown in bold, initial capital letters. Example: <strong>Save As</strong> dialog box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bold type</strong></td>
<td>External timing parameters, directory names, project names, disk drive names, filenames, filename extensions, and software utility names are shown in bold type. Examples: ( f_{\text{MAX}} ), \texttt{\qdesigns} directory, \texttt{d:} drive, \texttt{chiptrip.pdf} file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italic Type with Initial Capital Letters</strong></td>
<td>Document titles are shown in italic type with initial capital letters. Example: <em>AN 75: High-Speed Board Design.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Italic type</strong></td>
<td>Internal timing parameters and variables are shown in italic type. Examples: ( t_{\text{PIA}}, n + 1 ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Variable names</strong></td>
<td>Variable names are enclosed in angle brackets (&lt; &gt;) and shown in italic type. Example: (&lt;file\ name&gt;, &lt;project\ name&gt;.pof\ file.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Initial Capital Letters</strong></td>
<td>Keyboard keys and menu names are shown with initial capital letters. Examples: Delete key, the Options menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>“Subheading Title”</strong></td>
<td>References to sections within a document and titles of on-line help topics are shown in quotation marks. Example: “Typographic Conventions.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Courier type</strong></td>
<td>Signal and port names are shown in lowercase Courier type. Examples: \texttt{data1}, \texttt{tdi}, \texttt{input}. Active-low signals are denoted by suffix \texttt{n}, e.g., \texttt{resetn}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1., 2., 3., and a., b., c., etc.</strong></td>
<td>Numbered steps are used in a list of items when the sequence of the items is important, such as the steps listed in a procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ ● ‡</td>
<td>Bullets are used in a list of items when the sequence of the items is not important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔</td>
<td>The checkmark indicates a procedure that consists of one step only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>†</td>
<td>The hand points to information that requires special attention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="CAUTION" /></td>
<td>A caution calls attention to a condition or possible situation that can damage or destroy the product or the user’s work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="WARNING" /></td>
<td>A warning calls attention to a condition or possible situation that can cause injury to the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>←</td>
<td>The angled arrow indicates you should press the Enter key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="FEET" /></td>
<td>The feet direct you to more information on a particular topic.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This section provides information about the Nios® II processor.

This section includes the following chapters:

- Chapter 1, Introduction
- Chapter 2, Processor Architecture
- Chapter 3, Programming Model
- Chapter 4, Implementing the Nios II Processor in SOPC Builder
1. Introduction

Introduction

This chapter is an introduction to the Nios® II embedded processor family. This chapter will help both hardware and software engineers understand the similarities and differences between the Nios II processor and traditional embedded processors.

Nios II Processor System Basics

The Nios II processor is a general-purpose RISC processor core, providing:

- Full 32-bit instruction set, data path, and address space
- 32 general-purpose registers
- 32 external interrupt sources
- Single-instruction 32 \times 32 multiply and divide producing a 32-bit result
- Dedicated instructions for computing 64-bit and 128-bit products of multiplication
- Floating-point instructions for single-precision floating-point operations
- Single-instruction barrel shifter
- Access to a variety of on-chip peripherals, and interfaces to off-chip memories and peripherals
- Hardware-assisted debug module enabling processor start, stop, step and trace under integrated development environment (IDE) control
- Software development environment based on the GNU C/C++ tool chain and Eclipse IDE
- Integration with Altera’s SignalTap(r) II logic analyzer, enabling real-time analysis of instructions and data along with other signals in the FPGA design
- Instruction set architecture (ISA) compatible across all Nios II processor systems
- Performance up to 250 DMIPS

A Nios II processor system is equivalent to a microcontroller or “computer on a chip” that includes a CPU and a combination of peripherals and memory on a single chip. The term “Nios II processor system” refers to a Nios II processor core, a set of on-chip peripherals, on-chip memory, and interfaces to off-chip memory, all implemented on a single Altera® chip. Like a microcontroller family, all Nios II processor systems use a consistent instruction set and programming model.
Getting Started with the Nios II Processor

Getting started with the Nios II processor is similar to any other microcontroller family. The easiest way to start designing effectively is to purchase a development kit from Altera that includes a ready-made evaluation board and all the software development tools necessary to write Nios II software.

The Nios II software development environment is called The Nios II integrated development environment (IDE). The Nios II IDE is based on the GNU C/C++ compiler and the Eclipse IDE, and provides a familiar and established environment for software development. Using the Nios II IDE, designers can immediately begin developing and simulating Nios II software applications. Using the Nios II hardware reference designs included in an Altera development kit, designers can prototype their application running on a board before building a custom hardware platform. Figure 1–1 shows an example of a Nios II processor reference design available in an Altera Nios II development kit.

Figure 1–1. Example of a Nios II Processor System
If the prototype system adequately meets design requirements using an Altera-provided reference design, the reference design can be copied and used as-is in the final hardware platform. Otherwise, the designer can customize the Nios II processor system until it meets cost or performance requirements.

**Customizing Nios II Processor Designs**

Altera FPGAs provide flexibility to add features and enhance performance of the processor system. Conversely, unnecessary processor features and peripherals can be eliminated to fit the design in a smaller, lower-cost device.

Because the pins and logic resources in Altera devices are programmable, many customizations are possible:

- The pins on the chip can be rearranged to make board design easier. For example, address and data pins for external SDRAM memory can be moved to any side of the chip to shorten board traces.

- Extra pins and logic resources on the chip can be used for functions unrelated to the processor. Extra resources can provide a few extra gates and registers as “glue logic” for the board design; or extra resources can implement entire systems. For example, a Nios II processor system consumes only 5% of a large Altera FPGA, leaving the rest of the chip’s resources available to implement other functions.

- Extra pins and logic on the chip can be used to implement additional peripherals for the Nios II processor system. Altera offers a growing library of peripherals that can be easily connected to Nios II processor systems.

In practice, most FPGA designs do implement some extra logic in addition to the Nios II processor system. Additional logic has no affect on the programmer’s view of the Nios II processor.

**Configurable Soft-Core Processor Concepts**

This section introduces Nios II concepts that are unique or different from discrete microcontrollers. The concepts described below are mentioned here because they provide the background upon which other features are documented.
Configurable Soft-Core Processor Concepts

For the most part, these concepts relate to the flexibility for hardware designers to fine-tune system implementation. Software programmers generally are not affected by the hardware implementation details, and can write programs without awareness of the configurable nature of the Nios II processor core.

**Configurable Soft-Core Processor**

The Nios II processor is a configurable soft-core processor, as opposed to a fixed, off-the-shelf microcontroller. In this context, “configurable” means that features can be added or removed on a system-by-system basis to meet performance or price goals. “Soft-core” means the CPU core is offered in “soft” design form (i.e., not fixed in silicon), and can be targeted to any Altera FPGA family. In other words, Altera does not sell “Nios II chips”; Altera sells blank FPGAs. It is the users that configure the Nios II processor and peripherals to meet their specifications, and then program the system into an Altera FPGA.

Configurability does not mean that designers must create a new Nios II processor configuration for every new design. Altera provides ready-made Nios II system designs that system designers can use as-is. If these designs meet the system requirements, there is no need to configure the design further. In addition, software designers can use the Nios II instruction set simulator to begin writing and debugging Nios II applications before the final hardware configuration is determined.

**Flexible Peripheral Set & Address Map**

A flexible peripheral set is one of the most notable differences between Nios II processor systems and fixed microcontrollers. Because of the soft-core nature of the Nios II processor, designers can easily build made-to-order Nios II processor systems with the exact peripheral set required for the target applications.

A corollary of flexible peripherals is a flexible address map. Software constructs are provided to access memory and peripherals generically, independently of address location. Therefore, the flexible peripheral set and address map does not affect application developers.

Peripherals can be categorized into two broad classes: Standard peripherals and custom peripherals.
Standard Peripherals

Altera provides a set of peripherals commonly used in microcontrollers, such as timers, serial communication interfaces, general-purpose I/O, SDRAM controllers, and other memory interfaces. The list of available peripherals continues to grow as Altera and third-party vendors release new soft peripheral cores.

Custom Peripherals

Designers can also create their own custom peripherals and integrate them into Nios II processor systems. For performance-critical systems that spend most CPU cycles executing a specific section of code, it is a common technique to create a custom peripheral that implements the same function in hardware. This approach offers a double performance benefit: the hardware implementation is faster than software; and the processor is free to perform other functions in parallel while the custom peripheral operates on data.

Custom Instructions

Like custom peripherals, custom instructions are a method to increase system performance by augmenting the processor with custom hardware. The soft-core nature of the Nios II processor enables designers to integrate custom logic into the arithmetic logic unit (ALU). Similar to native Nios II instructions, custom instruction logic can take values from up to two source registers and optionally write back a result to a destination register.

By using custom instructions, designers can fine tune the system hardware to meet performance goals. Because the processor is implemented on reprogrammable Altera FPGAs, software and hardware engineers can work together to iteratively optimize the hardware and test the results of software executing on real hardware.

From the software perspective, custom instructions appear as machine-generated assembly macros or C functions, so programmers do not need to know assembly in order to use custom instructions.

Automated System Generation

Altera’s SOPC Builder design tool fully automates the process of configuring processor features and generating a hardware design that can be programmed into an FPGA. The SOPC Builder graphical user interface (GUI) enables hardware designers to configure Nios II processor systems with any number of peripherals and memory interfaces. Entire processor systems can be created without requiring the designer to perform any
schematic or hardware description-language (HDL) design entry. SOPC Builder can also import a designer’s HDL design files, providing an easy mechanism to integrate custom logic into a Nios II processor system.

After system generation, the design can be programmed into a board, and software can be debugged executing on the board. Once the design is programmed into a board, the processor architecture is fixed. Software development proceeds in the same manner as for traditional, non-configurable processors.

Table 1–1 shows the revision history for this document.

### Table 1–1. Document Revision History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| May 2006, v6.0.0        | ● Added single precision floating point and integration with SignalTap®II logic analyzer to features list.  
                          | ● Updated performance to 250 DMIPS.                                          |                    |
| October 2005, v5.1.0    | No change from previous release.                                             |                    |
| May 2005, v5.0.0        | No change from previous release.                                             |                    |
| September 2004, v1.1    | Updates for Nios II 1.01 release.                                            |                    |
| May 2004, v1.0          | First publication.                                                           |                    |
2. Processor Architecture

Introduction

This chapter describes the hardware structure of the Nios® II processor, including a discussion of all the functional units of the Nios II architecture and the fundamentals of the Nios II processor hardware implementation.

The Nios II architecture describes an instruction set architecture (ISA). The ISA in turn necessitates a set of functional units that implement the instructions. A Nios II processor core is a hardware design that implements the Nios II instruction set and supports the functional units described in this document. The processor core does not include peripherals or the connection logic to the outside world. It includes only the circuits required to implement the Nios II architecture.

Figure 2–1 shows a block diagram of the Nios II processor core.

Figure 2–1. Nios II Processor Core Block Diagram
The Nios II architecture defines the following user-visible functional units:

- Register file
- Arithmetic logic unit
- Interface to custom instruction logic
- Exception controller
- Interrupt controller
- Instruction bus
- Data bus
- Instruction and data cache memories
- Tightly coupled memory interfaces for instructions and data
- JTAG debug module

The following sections discuss hardware implementation details related to each functional unit.

Processor Implementation

The functional units of the Nios II architecture form the foundation for the Nios II instruction set. However, this does not indicate that any unit is implemented in hardware. The Nios II architecture describes an instruction set, not a particular hardware implementation. A functional unit can be implemented in hardware, emulated in software, or omitted entirely.

A Nios II implementation is a set of design choices embodied by a particular Nios II processor core. All implementations support the instruction set defined in the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook. Each implementation achieves specific objectives, such as smaller core size or higher performance. This allows the Nios II architecture to adapt to the needs of different target applications.

Implementation variables generally fit one of three trade-off patterns: more-or-less of a feature; inclusion-or-exclusion of a feature; hardware implementation or software emulation of a feature. An example of each trade-off follows:

- More or less of a feature—For example, to fine-tune performance, you can increase or decrease the amount of instruction cache memory. A larger cache increases execution speed of large programs, while a smaller cache conserves on-chip memory resources.

- Inclusion or exclusion of a feature—For example, to reduce cost, you can choose to omit the JTAG debug module. This decision conserves on-chip logic and memory resources, but it eliminates the ability to use a software debugger to debug applications.
Hardware implementation or software emulation—For example, in control applications that rarely perform complex arithmetic, you can choose for the division instruction to be emulated in software. Removing the divide hardware conserves on-chip resources but increases the execution time of division operations.

For details of which Nios II cores supports what features, refer to the Nios II Core Implementation Details chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook. For complete details of user-selectable parameters for the Nios II processor, refer to the Implementing the Nios II Processor in SOPC Builder chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.

Register File

The Nios II architecture supports a flat register file, consisting of thirty two 32-bit general-purpose integer registers, and six 32-bit control registers. The architecture supports supervisor and user modes that allow system code to protect the control registers from errant applications.

The Nios II architecture allows for the future addition of floating point registers.

Arithmetic Logic Unit

The Nios II arithmetic logic unit (ALU) operates on data stored in general-purpose registers. ALU operations take one or two inputs from registers, and store a result back in a register. The ALU supports the data operations shown in Table 2–1:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arithmetic</td>
<td>The ALU supports addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division on signed and unsigned operands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relational</td>
<td>The ALU supports the equal, not-equal, greater-than-or-equal, and less-than relational operations (==, !=, &gt;=, &lt;) on signed and unsigned operands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical</td>
<td>The ALU supports AND, OR, NOR, and XOR logical operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift and Rotate</td>
<td>The ALU supports shift and rotate operations, and can shift/rotate data by 0 to 31 bit-positions per instruction. The ALU supports arithmetic shift right and logical shift right/left. The ALU supports rotate left/right.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To implement any other operation, software computes the result by performing a combination of the fundamental operations in Table 2–1.
Unimplemented Instructions

Some Nios II processor core implementations do not provide hardware to perform multiplication or division operations. The following instructions are not present in all Nios II core implementations: \texttt{mul, multi, mulxss, mulxsu, mulxuu, div, divu}. In such a core, these are known as unimplemented instructions. All other instructions are implemented in hardware.

The processor generates an exception whenever it issues an unimplemented instruction, and the exception handler calls a routine that emulates the operation in software. Therefore, unimplemented instructions do not affect the programmer’s view of the processor.

Custom Instructions

The Nios II architecture supports user-defined custom instructions. The Nios II ALU connects directly to custom instruction logic, enabling you to implement in hardware operations that are accessed and used exactly like native instructions.

For further information see the \textit{Nios II Custom Instruction User Guide}.

Floating Point Instructions

The Nios II architecture supports single precision floating point instructions as specified by the IEEE Std 754-1985. These floating point instructions are implemented as custom instructions. Table 2–2 provides a detailed description of the conformance to IEEE 754-1985.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
Feature & Implementation \\
\hline
Operations\(^{(1)}\) & \\
Addition & Implemented \\
Subtraction & Implemented \\
Multiplication & Implemented \\
Division & Optional \\
Precision & \\
Single & Implemented \\
Double & Not implemented. Double precision operations are implemented in software. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Hardware Conformance with IEEE 754-1985 Floating Point}
\end{table}
The floating point custom instructions can be added to any Nios II processor core. The Nios II software development tools recognize C code that can take advantage of the floating point instructions when they are present in the processor core.

### Reset Signals

The Nios II CPU core supports two reset signals.

- **reset** - This a global hardware reset signal that forces the processor core to reset immediately.
- **cpu_resetrequest** - This is a local reset signal that causes the CPU to reset without affecting other components in the Nios II system. The processor finishes executing any instructions in the pipeline, and then enters the reset state. This process can take several clock cycles. The processor core asserts the cpu_resettaken signal.

### Table 2–2. Hardware Conformance with IEEE 754-1985 Floating Point

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Implementation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exception conditions</td>
<td><em>Invalid operation</em> Result is <em>Not a Number (NaN)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Division by zero</em> Result is ±infinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Overflow</em> Result is ±infinity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Inexact</em> Result is a normal number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Underflow</em> Result is ±0(^{(2)})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rounding Modes</td>
<td><em>Round to nearest</em> Implemented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Round toward zero</em> Not implemented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Round toward +infinity</em> Not implemented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Round toward -infinity</em> Not implemented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NaN</td>
<td><em>Quiet</em> Implemented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Signaling</em> Not implemented</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Subnormal (denormalized)       | Subnormal operands are treated as zero. The floating point custom instructions do not generate subnormal numbers.\(^{(2)}\) |}

Notes to: Table 2–2

1. The Nios II IDE generates a software implementation of primitive floating point operations other than addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. This includes operations such as floating point conversions and comparisons. The software implementations of these primitives are 100% compliant with IEEE 754-1985.
2. Some implementations of the floating point custom instructions might generate subnormals in the underflow condition.
for 1 cycle when the reset is complete and then periodically if
_cpu_resetrequest remains asserted. The CPU remains in reset for as
long as _cpu_resetrequest is asserted.

While the CPU is in reset, it periodically reads from the reset address.
It discards the result of the read, and remains in reset.

The CPU does not respond to _cpu_resetrequest when the
processor is under the control of the JTAG debug module. The
processor responds to the _cpu_resetrequest signal only if it is
still asserted after the JTAG Debug Module relinquishes control.

Exception & Interrupt Controller

Exception Controller
The Nios II architecture provides a simple, non-vectored exception
ccontroller to handle all exception types. All exceptions, including
hardware interrupts, cause the processor to transfer execution to a single
exception address. The exception handler at this address determines the
cause of the exception and dispatches an appropriate exception routine.

The exception address is specified at system generation time.

Integral Interrupt Controller
The Nios II architecture supports 32 external hardware interrupts. The
processor core has 32 level-sensitive interrupt request (IRQ) inputs, _irq0
through _irq31, providing a unique input for each interrupt source. IRQ
priority is determined by software. The architecture supports nested
interrupts.

The software can enable and disable any interrupt source individually
through the _ienable control register, which contains an interrupt-enable
bit for each of the IRQ inputs. Software can enable and disable interrupts
globally using the PIE bit of the _status control register. A hardware
interrupt is generated if and only if all three of these conditions are true:

- The PIE bit of the _status register is 1
- An interrupt-request input, _irq<n>, is asserted
- The corresponding bit _n of the _ienable register is 1

Interrupt Vector Custom Instruction
The Nios II processor core offers an interrupt vector custom instruction
which accelerates interrupt vector dispatch. Include this custom
instruction to reduce your program’s interrupt latency.
The interrupt vector custom instruction is based on a priority encoder with one input for each interrupt connected to the Nios II processor. The cost of the interrupt vector custom instruction depends on the number of interrupts connected to the Nios II processor. The worse case is a system with 32 interrupts. In this case, the interrupt vector custom instruction consumes about 50 logic elements (LEs).

If you have a large number of interrupts connected, adding the interrupt vector custom instruction to your system might lower \( f_{\text{MAX}} \).

For guidance in adding the interrupt vector custom instruction to the Nios II processor, refer to the Implementing the Nios II Processor in SOPC Builder chapter of the Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook.

Table 2–3 details the implementation of the interrupt vector custom instruction.

Table 2–3. Interrupt Vector Custom Instruction

**ALT_CI_EXCEPTION_VECTOR_N**

| Operation: | if (ipending == 0) || (estatus.PIE == 0)  
|           | then rC ← negative value  
|           | else rC ← 8 x bit # of the least-significant 1 bit of the ipending register (ctl4)  
| Assembler Syntax: | custom ALT_CI_EXCEPTION_VECTOR_N, rC, r0, r0  
| Example: | custom ALT_CI_EXCEPTION_VECTOR_N, et, r0, r0  
| blt et, r0, not_irq  
| Description: | The interrupt vector custom instruction accelerates interrupt vector dispatch. This custom instruction identifies the highest priority interrupt, generates the vector table offset, and stores this offset to rC. The instruction generates a negative offset if there is no hardware interrupt (that is, the exception is caused by a software condition, such as a trap).  
| Usage: | The interrupt vector custom instruction is used exclusively by the exception handler.  
| Instruction Type: | R  
| Instruction Fields: | C = Register index of operand rC  
|                     | N = Value of ALT_CI_EXCEPTION_VECTOR_N  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 0 0 C 0 0 1 | N | 0x32  

For an explanation of the instruction reference format, see the Instruction Set Reference chapter in the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.
This section explains hardware implementation details of the Nios II memory and I/O organization. The discussion covers both general concepts true of all Nios II processor systems, as well as features that might change from system to system.

The flexible nature of the Nios II memory and I/O organization are the most notable difference between Nios II processor systems and traditional microcontrollers. Because Nios II processor systems are configurable, the memories and peripherals vary from system to system. As a result, the memory and I/O organization varies from system to system.

A Nios II core uses one or more of the following to provide memory and I/O access:

- Instruction master port - An Avalon master port that connects to instruction memory via Avalon switch fabric
- Instruction cache - Fast cache memory internal to the Nios II core
- Data master port - An Avalon master port that connects to data memory and peripherals via Avalon switch fabric
- Data cache - Fast cache memory internal to the Nios II core
- Tightly coupled instruction or data memory port - Interface to fast memory outside the Nios II core

The Nios II architecture hides the hardware details from the programmer, so programmers can develop Nios II applications without awareness of the hardware implementation.

For details that affect programming issues, see the Programming Model chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.

Figure 2–2 shows a diagram of the memory and I/O organization for a Nios II processor core.
Instruction & Data Buses

The Nios II architecture supports separate instruction and data buses, classifying it as a Harvard architecture. Both the instruction and data buses are implemented as Avalon master ports that adhere to the Avalon™ interface specification. The data master port connects to both memory and peripheral components, while the instruction master port connects only to memory components.

Refer to the Avalon Interface Specification for details of the Avalon interface.

Memory & Peripheral Access

The Nios II architecture provides memory-mapped I/O access. Both data memory and peripherals are mapped into the address space of the data master port. The Nios II architecture is little endian. Words and halfwords are stored in memory with the more-significant bytes at higher addresses.
The Nios II architecture does not specify anything about the existence of memory and peripherals; the quantity, type, and connection of memory and peripherals are system-dependent. Typically, Nios II processor systems contain a mix of fast on-chip memory and slower off-chip memory. Peripherals typically reside on-chip, although interfaces to off-chip peripherals also exist.

**Instruction Master Port**

The Nios II instruction bus is implemented as a 32-bit Avalon master port. The instruction master port performs a single function: it fetches instructions to be executed by the processor. The instruction master port does not perform any write operations.

The instruction master port is a pipelined Avalon master port. Support for pipelined Avalon transfers minimizes the impact of synchronous memory with pipeline latency and increases the overall $f_{\text{MAX}}$ of the system. The instruction master port can issue successive read requests before data has returned from prior requests. The Nios II processor can prefetch sequential instructions and perform branch prediction to keep the instruction pipe as active as possible.

The instruction master port always retrieves 32 bits of data. The instruction master port relies on dynamic bus-sizing logic contained in the Avalon switch fabric. By virtue of dynamic bus sizing, every instruction fetch returns a full instruction word, regardless of the width of the target memory. Consequently, programs do not need to be aware of the widths of memory in the Nios II processor system.

The Nios II architecture supports on-chip cache memory for improving average instruction fetch performance when accessing slower memory. See “Cache Memory” on page 2–11 for details. The Nios II architecture supports tightly coupled memory, which provides guaranteed low-latency access to on-chip memory. See “Tightly Coupled Memory” on page 2–13 for details.

**Data Master Port**

The Nios II data bus is implemented as a 32-bit Avalon master port. The data master port performs two functions:

- Read data from memory or a peripheral when the processor executes a load instruction
- Write data to memory or a peripheral when the processor executes a store instruction
Byte-enable signals on the master port specify which of the four byte-lane(s) to write during store operations. The data master port does not support pipelined Avalon transfers, because it is not meaningful to predict data addresses or to continue execution before data is retrieved. Consequently, any memory pipeline latency is perceived by the data master port as wait states. Load and store operations can complete in a single clock-cycle when the data master port is connected to zero-wait-state memory.

The Nios II architecture supports on-chip cache memory for improving average data transfer performance when accessing slower memory. See “Cache Memory” for details. The Nios II architecture supports tightly coupled memory, which provides guaranteed low-latency access to on-chip memory. Refer to “Tightly Coupled Memory” on page 2–13 for details.

Shared Memory for Instructions & Data

Usually the instruction and data master ports share a single memory that contains both instructions and data. While the processor core has separate instruction and data buses, the overall Nios II processor system might present a single, shared instruction/data bus to the outside world. The outside view of the Nios II processor system depends on the memory and peripherals in the system and the structure of the Avalon switch fabric.

The data and instruction master ports never cause a gridlock condition in which one port starves the other. For highest performance, assign the data master port higher arbitration priority on any memory that is shared by both instruction and data master ports.

Cache Memory

The Nios II architecture supports cache memories on both the instruction master port (instruction cache) and the data master port (data cache). Cache memory resides on-chip as an integral part of the Nios II processor core. The cache memories can improve the average memory access time for Nios II processor systems that use slow off-chip memory such as SDRAM for program and data storage.

The instruction and data caches are enabled perpetually at run-time, but methods are provided for software to bypass the data cache so that peripheral accesses do not return cached data. Cache management and cache coherency are handled by software. The Nios II instruction set provides instructions for cache management.
Configurable Cache Memory Options

The cache memories are optional. The need for higher memory performance (and by association, the need for cache memory) is application dependent. Many applications require the smallest possible processor core, and can trade-off performance for size.

A Nios II processor core might include one, both, or neither of the cache memories. Furthermore, for cores that provide data and/or instruction cache, the sizes of the cache memories are user-configurable. The inclusion of cache memory does not affect the functionality of programs, but it does affect the speed at which the processor fetches instructions and reads/writes data.

Effective Use of Cache Memory

The effectiveness of cache memory to improve performance is based on the following premises:

- Regular memory is located off-chip, and access time is long compared to on-chip memory
- The largest, performance-critical instruction loop is smaller than the instruction cache
- The largest block of performance-critical data is smaller than the data cache

Optimal cache configuration is application specific, although you can make decisions that are effective across a range of applications. For example, if a Nios II processor system includes only fast, on-chip memory (i.e., it never accesses slow, off-chip memory), an instruction or data cache is unlikely to offer any performance gain. As another example, if the critical loop of a program is 2 Kbytes, but the size of the instruction cache is 1 Kbyte, an instruction cache does not improve execution speed. In fact, an instruction cache may degrade performance in this situation.

If an application always requires certain data or sections of code to be located in cache memory for performance reasons, the tightly coupled memory feature might provide a more appropriate solution. Refer to “Tightly Coupled Memory” on page 2–13 for details.

Cache Bypass Method

The Nios II architecture provides load and store I/O instructions such as ldio and stio that bypass the data cache and force an Avalon data transfer to a specified address. Additional cache bypass methods might be provided, depending on the processor core implementation.
Some Nios II processor cores support a mechanism called \textit{bit-31 cache bypass} to bypass the cache depending on the value of the most-significant bit of the address.

Refer to the \textit{Implementing the Nios II Core Implementation Details} chapter of the \textit{Nios II Processor Reference Handbook} for details.

**Tightly Coupled Memory**

Tightly coupled memory provides guaranteed low-latency memory access for performance-critical applications. Compared to cache memory, tightly coupled memory provides the following benefits:

- Performance similar to cache memory
- Software can guarantee that performance-critical code or data is located in tightly coupled memory
- No real-time caching overhead, such as loading, invalidating, or flushing memory

Physically, a tightly coupled memory port is a separate master port on the Nios II processor core, similar to the instruction or data master port. A Nios II core can have zero, one, or multiple tightly coupled memories. The Nios II architecture supports tightly coupled memories for both instruction and data access. Each tightly coupled memory port connects directly to exactly one memory with guaranteed low, fixed latency. The memory is external to the Nios II core and is usually located on chip.

**Accessing Tightly Coupled Memory**

Tightly coupled memories occupy normal address space, the same as other memory devices connected via Avalon switch fabric. The address ranges for tightly coupled memories (if any) are determined at system generation time.

Software accesses tightly coupled memory using regular load and store instructions. From the software’s perspective, there is no difference accessing tightly coupled memory compared to other memory.

**Effective Use of Tightly Coupled Memory**

A system can use tightly coupled memory to achieve maximum performance for accessing a specific section of code or data. For example, interrupt-intensive applications can partition exception handler code into a tightly coupled memory to minimize interrupt latency. Similarly, compute-intensive digital signal processing (DSP) applications can partition data buffers into tightly coupled memory for the fastest possible data access.
If the application’s memory requirements are small enough to fit entirely on chip, it is possible to use tightly coupled memory exclusively for code and data. Larger applications must selectively choose what to include in tightly coupled memory to maximize the cost-performance trade-off.

**Address Map**

The address map for memories and peripherals in a Nios II processor system is design dependent. You specify the address map at system generation time.

There are three addresses that are part of the CPU and deserve special mention:

- reset address
- exception address
- break handler address

Programmers access memories and peripherals by using macros and drivers. Therefore, the flexible address map does not affect application developers.

**JTAG Debug Module**

The Nios II architecture supports a JTAG debug module that provides on-chip emulation features to control the processor remotely from a host PC. PC-based software debugging tools communicate with the JTAG debug module and provide facilities, such as:

- Downloading programs to memory
- Starting and stopping execution
- Setting breakpoints and watchpoints
- Analyzing registers and memory
- Collecting real-time execution trace data

The debug module connects to the JTAG circuitry in an Altera® FPGA. External debugging probes can then access the processor via the standard JTAG interface on the FPGA. On the processor side, the debug module connects to signals inside the processor core. The debug module has non-maskable control over the processor, and does not require a software stub linked into the application under test. All system resources visible to the processor in supervisor mode are available to the debug module. For trace data collection, the debug module stores trace data in memory either on-chip or in the debug probe.
The debug module gains control of the processor either by asserting a hardware break signal, or by writing a break instruction into program memory to be executed. In both cases, the processor transfers control to a routine located at the break address. The break address is specified at system generation time.

Soft-core processors such as the Nios II processor offer unique debug capabilities beyond the features of traditional, fixed processors. The soft-core nature of the Nios II processor allows you to debug a system in development using a full-featured debug core, and later remove the debug features to conserve logic resources. For the release version of a product, the JTAG debug module functionality can be reduced, or removed altogether.

The following sections describe the capabilities of the Nios II JTAG debug module hardware. The usage of all hardware features is dependent on host software, such as the Nios II IDE, which manages the connection to the target processor and controls the debug process.

**JTAG Target Connection**

The JTAG target connection refers to the ability to connect to the CPU through the standard JTAG pins on the Altera FPGA. This provides the basic capabilities to start and stop the processor, and examine/edit registers and memory. The JTAG target connection is also the minimum requirement for the Nios II IDE flash programmer.

**Download & Execute Software**

Downloading software refers to the ability to download executable code and data to the processor’s memory via the JTAG connection. After downloading software to memory, the JTAG debug module can then exit debug mode and transfer execution to the start of executable code.

**Software Breakpoints**

Software breakpoints provide the ability to set a breakpoint on instructions residing in RAM. The software breakpoint mechanism writes a break instruction into executable code stored in RAM. When the processor executes the break instruction, control is transferred to the JTAG debug module.
Hardware Breakpoints

Hardware breakpoints provide the ability to set a breakpoint on instructions residing in nonvolatile memory, such as flash memory. The hardware breakpoint mechanism continuously monitors the processor’s current instruction address. If the instruction address matches the hardware breakpoint address, the JTAG debug module takes control of the processor.

Hardware breakpoints are implemented using the JTAG debug module’s hardware trigger feature.

Hardware Triggers

Hardware triggers activate a debug action based on conditions on the instruction or data bus during real-time program execution. Triggers can do more than halt processor execution. For example, a trigger can be used to enable trace data collection during real-time processor execution.

Table 2–4 lists all the conditions that can cause a trigger. Hardware trigger conditions are based on either the instruction or data bus. Trigger conditions on the same bus can be logically ANDed, enabling the JTAG debug module to trigger, for example, only on write cycles to a specific address.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Bus (1)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specific address</td>
<td>D, I</td>
<td>Trigger when the bus accesses a specific address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specific data value</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Trigger when a specific data value appears on the bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Read cycle</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Trigger on a read bus cycle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Write cycle</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Trigger on a write bus cycle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armed</td>
<td>D, I</td>
<td>Trigger only after an armed trigger event. See “Armed Triggers” on page 2–17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Range</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Trigger on a range of address values, data values, or both. See “Triggering on Ranges of Values” on page 2–17.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
(1) “I” indicates instruction bus, “D” indicates data bus.

When a trigger condition occurs during processor execution, the JTAG debug module triggers an action, such as halting execution, or starting trace capture. Table 2–5 lists the trigger actions supported by the Nios II JTAG debug module.
Armed Triggers

The JTAG debug module provides a two-level trigger capability, called armed triggers. Armed triggers enable the JTAG debug module to trigger on event B, only after event A. In this example, event A causes a trigger action that enables the trigger for event B.

Triggering on Ranges of Values

The JTAG debug module can trigger on ranges of data or address values on the data bus. This mechanism uses two hardware triggers together to create a trigger condition that activates on a range of values within a specified range.

Trace Capture

Trace capture refers to ability to record the instruction-by-instruction execution of the processor as it executes code in real-time. The JTAG debug module offers the following trace features:

- Capture execution trace (instruction bus cycles).
- Capture data trace (data bus cycles).
- For each data bus cycle, capture address, data, or both.
- Start and stop capturing trace in real time, based on triggers.
- Manually start and stop trace under host control.
- Optionally stop capturing trace when trace buffer is full, leaving the processor executing.
- Store trace data in on-chip memory buffer in the JTAG debug module. (This memory is accessible only through the JTAG connection.)
- Store trace data to larger buffers in an off-chip debug probe.

### Table 2–5. Trigger Actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Break</td>
<td>Halt execution and transfer control to the JTAG debug module.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External trigger</td>
<td>Assert a trigger signal output. This trigger output can be used, for example, to trigger an external logic analyzer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trace on</td>
<td>Turn on trace collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trace off</td>
<td>Turn off trace collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trace sample (1)</td>
<td>Store one sample of the bus to trace buffer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arm</td>
<td>Enable an armed trigger.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

(1) Only conditions on the data bus can trigger this action.
Certain trace features require additional licensing or debug tools from third-party debug providers. For example, an on-chip trace buffer is a standard feature of the Nios II processor, but using an off-chip trace buffer requires additional debug software and hardware provided by First Silicon Solutions (FS2).

For details, see www.fs2.com.

**Execution vs. Data Trace**

The JTAG debug module supports tracing the instruction bus (execution trace), the data bus (data trace), or both simultaneously. Execution trace records only the addresses of the instructions executed, enabling you to analyze where in memory (i.e., in which functions) code executed. Data trace records the data associated with each load and store operation on the data bus.

The JTAG debug module can filter the data bus trace in real time to capture the following:

- Load addresses only
- Store addresses only
- Both load and store addresses
- Load data only
- Load address and data
- Store address and data
- Address and data for both loads and stores
- Single sample of the data bus upon trigger event

**Trace Frames**

A “frame” is a unit of memory allocated for collecting trace data. However, a frame is not an absolute measure of the trace depth.

To keep pace with the processor executing in real time, execution trace is optimized to store only selected addresses, such as branches, calls, traps, and interrupts. From these addresses, host-side debug software can later reconstruct an exact instruction-by-instruction execution trace. Furthermore, execution trace data is stored in a compressed format, such that one frame represents more than one instruction. As a result of these optimizations, the actual start and stop points for trace collection during execution might vary slightly from the user-specified start and stop points.
Data trace stores 100% of requested loads and stores to the trace buffer in real time. When storing to the trace buffer, data trace frames have lower priority than execution trace frames. Therefore, while data frames are always stored in chronological order, execution and data trace are not guaranteed to be exactly synchronized with each other.

Table 2–6 shows the revision history for this document.

### Table 2–6. Document Revision History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>Describe interrupt vector custom instruction.</td>
<td>Interrupt vector custom instruction added.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| May 2006, v6.0.0        | • Added description of optional `cpu_resetrequest` and `cpu_resettaken`.  
                          | • Added section on single precision floating point. |                                        |
| October 2005, v5.1.0    | No change from previous release.                 |                                          |
| May 2005, v5.0.0        | Added tightly coupled memory.                    |                                          |
| December 2004, v1.2     | Added new control register `ctl15`.              |                                          |
| September 2004, v1.1    | Updates for Nios II 1.01 release.                |                                          |
| May 2004, v1.0          | First publication.                               |                                          |
This chapter describes the Nios® II programming model, covering processor features at the assembly language level. The programmer’s view of the following features are discussed in detail:

- General-purpose registers, page 3–1
- Control registers, page 3–2
- Hardware-assisted debug processing, page 3–11
- Exception processing, page 3–5
- Hardware interrupts, page 3–6
- Unimplemented instructions, page 3–8
- Memory and peripheral organization, page 3–12
- Cache memory, page 3–12
- Processor reset state, page 3–13
- Instruction set categories, page 3–14
- Custom instructions, page 3–20

High-level software development tools are not discussed here. See the *Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook* for information about developing software.

**General-Purpose Registers**

The Nios II architecture provides thirty-two 32-bit general-purpose registers, \( r_0 \) through \( r_{31} \). See Table 3–1 on page 2. Some registers have names recognized by the assembler. The zero register (\( r_0 \)) always returns the value 0, and writing to zero has no effect. The ra register (\( r_{31} \)) holds the return address used by procedure calls and is implicitly accessed by call and ret instructions. C and C++ compilers use a common procedure-call convention, assigning specific meaning to registers \( r_1 \) through \( r_{23} \) and \( r_{26} \) through \( r_{28} \).
Control Registers

There are six 32-bit control registers, ctl0 through ctl5. All control registers have names recognized by the assembler.

Control registers are accessed differently than the general-purpose registers. The special instructions rdctl and wrctl provide the only means to read and write to the control registers.

For more information, refer to the Application Binary Interface chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.
Details of the control registers are shown in Table 3–2. For details on the relationship between the control registers and exception processing, see Figure 3–1 on page 3–7.

### Table 3–2. Control Register & Bits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>31…1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ctl0</td>
<td>status</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
<td>PIE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctl1</td>
<td>estatus</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
<td>EPIE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctl2</td>
<td>bstatus</td>
<td>Reserved</td>
<td>BPIE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctl3</td>
<td>ienable</td>
<td>Interrupt-enable bits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctl4</td>
<td>ipending</td>
<td>Pending-interrupt bits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ctl5</td>
<td>cpuid</td>
<td>Unique processor identifier</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**status (ctl0)**

The value in the **status** register controls the state of the Nios II processor. All status bits are cleared after processor reset. See “Processor Reset State” on page 3–13. One bit is defined: PIE, as shown in Table 3–3.

### Table 3–3. Status Register Bits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PIE bit</td>
<td>PIE is the processor interrupt-enable bit. When PIE is 0, external interrupts are ignored. When PIE is 1, external interrupts can be taken, depending on the value of the ienable register.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**estatus (ctl1)**

The **estatus** register holds a saved copy of the **status** register during exception processing. One bit is defined: EPIE. This is the saved values of PIE, as defined in Table 3–3.

The exception handler can examine estatus to determine the pre-exception status of the processor. When returning from an interrupt, the eret instruction causes the processor to copy estatus back to status, restoring the pre-exception value of status.

See “Exception Processing” on page 3–5 for more information.
Operating Modes

**bstatus (ctl2)**

The `bstatus` register holds a saved copy of the `status` register during debug break processing. One bit is defined: BPIE. This is the saved value of PIE, as defined in Table 3–3 on page 3–3.

When a break occurs, the value of the `status` register is copied into `bstatus`. Using `bstatus`, the `status` register can be restored to the value it had prior to the break.

See “Debug Mode” on page 3–5 for more information.

**ienable (ctl3)**

The `ienable` register controls the handling of external hardware interrupts. Each bit of the `ienable` register corresponds to one of the interrupt inputs, `irq0` through `irq31`. A bit value of 1 means that the corresponding interrupt is enabled; a bit value of 0 means that the corresponding interrupt is disabled.

See “Exception Processing” on page 3–5 for more information.

**ipending (ctl4)**

The value of the `ipending` register indicates which interrupts are pending. A value of 1 in bit $n$ means that the corresponding `irq$n$` input is asserted, and that the corresponding interrupt is enabled in the `ienable` register. The effect of writing a value to the `ipending` register is undefined.

**cpuid (ctl5)**

The `cpuid` register holds a static value that uniquely identifies the processor in a multi-processor system. The `cpuid` value is determined at system generation time. Writing to the `cpuid` register has no effect.

See “Exception Processing” on page 3–5 for more information.

**Operating Modes**

The Nios II processor has two operating modes:

- Normal mode
- Debug mode
The following sections define the modes and the transitions between modes.

**Normal Mode**

In general, system and application code execute in normal mode. The processor is in normal mode immediately after processor reset.

General-purpose registers $b\,t\,(r25)$ and $b\,a\,(r30)$ are not available in normal mode. Programs are not prevented from storing values in these registers, but if they do, the debug mode could overwrite the values. The $b\,s\,t\,a\,t\,u\,s\,t\,u\,s\,t\,r\,g\,i\,s\,t\,(c\,t\,1\,2)$ is also unavailable in normal mode.

**Debug Mode**

Software debugging tools use debug mode to implement features such as breakpoints and watch-points. System code and application code never execute in debug mode. The processor enters debug mode only after the `break` instruction or after the JTAG debug module forces a break via hardware.

In debug mode all processor functions are available and unrestricted to the software debugging tool. Refer to “Break Processing” on page 3–11 for further information.

**Changing Modes**

The processor starts in normal mode after reset. It enters debug mode only as directed by software debugging tools. System code and application code have no control over when the processor enters debug mode. The processor always returns to its prior state when exiting from debug mode.

For further details, refer to “Break Processing” on page 3–11.

**Exception Processing**

An exception is a transfer of control away from a program’s normal flow of execution, caused by an event, either internal or external to the processor, which requires immediate attention. Exception processing is the act of responding to an exception, and then returning to the pre-exception execution state.

An exception causes the processor to take the following steps:

1. Copies the contents of the $s\,t\,a\,t\,u\,s\,t\,r\,g\,(c\,t\,1\,0)$ to $e\,s\,t\,a\,t\,u\,s\,t\,r\,g\,(c\,t\,11)$ saving the processor’s pre-exception status
2. Clear the PIE bit of the status register, disabling external processor interrupts

3. Writes the address of the instruction after the exception to the ea register (r29)

4. Transfers execution to the address of the exception handler that determines the cause of the interrupt

The address of the exception handler is specified at system generation time. At run-time this address is fixed, and software cannot modify it. Programmers do not directly access the exception handler address, and can write programs without awareness of the address.

The exception handler is a routine that determines the cause of each exception, and then dispatches an appropriate exception routine to respond to the interrupt.

For a detailed discussion of writing programs to take advantage of exception and interrupt handling, see the Exception Handling chapter in the Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook.

Exception Types

Nios II exceptions fall into the following categories:

- Hardware interrupt
- Software trap
- Unimplemented instruction
- Other

The following sections describe each exception type in detail.

Hardware Interrupt

An external source such as a peripheral device can request a hardware interrupt by asserting one of the processor’s 32 interrupt-request inputs, irq0 through irq31. A hardware interrupt is generated if and only if all three of these conditions are true:

- The PIE bit of the status register (ctl0) is 1
- An interrupt-request input, irqn, is asserted
- The corresponding bit n of the ienable register (ctl3) is 1.

Upon hardware interrupt the PIE bit is set to 0, disabling further interrupts. The value of the ipending register (ctl4) shows which interrupt requests (IRQ) are pending. By peripheral design, an IRQ bit is
guaranteed to remain asserted until the processor explicitly responds to the peripheral. Figure 3–1 shows the relationship between ipending, ienable, PIE, and the generation of an interrupt.

**Figure 3–1. Relationship Between ienable, ipending, PIE & Hardware Interrupts**

A software exception routine determines which of the pending interrupts has the highest priority, and then transfers control to the appropriate interrupt service routine (ISR). The ISR must stop the interrupt from being visible (either by clearing it at the source or masking it using ienable) before returning and/or before re-enabling PIE. The ISR must also save estatus (ctl1) and ea (r29) before re-enabling PIE.
Interrupts can be re-enabled by writing 1 to the PIE bit, thereby allowing the current ISR to be interrupted. Typically, the exception routine adjusts ienable so that IRQs of equal or lower priority are disabled before re-enabling interrupts.

See “Nested Exceptions” on page 3–10.

Software Trap

When a program issues the trap instruction, it generates a software trap exception. A program typically issues a software trap when the program requires servicing by the operating system. The exception handler for the operating system determines the reason for the trap and responds appropriately.

Unimplemented Instruction

When the processor issues a valid instruction that is not implemented in hardware, an unimplemented instruction exception is generated. The exception handler determines which instruction generated the exception. If the instruction is not implemented in hardware, control is passed to an exception routine that emulates the operation in software.

See “Potential Unimplemented Instructions” on page 3–21 for further details.

“Unimplemented instruction” does not mean “invalid instruction.” Processor behavior for undefined, i.e., invalid, instruction words is dependent on the Nios II core. For most Nios II core implementations, executing an invalid instruction produces an undefined result. See the Nios II Core Implementation Details chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook for details.

Other Exceptions

The previous sections describe all of the exception types defined by the Nios II architecture at the time of publishing. However, some processor implementations might generate exceptions that do not fall into the above categories. For example, a future implementation might provide a memory management unit (MMU) that generates access violation exceptions. Therefore, a robust exception handler should provide a safe response (such as issuing a warning) in the event that it cannot exactly identify the cause of an exception.
Determining the Cause of Exceptions

The exception handler must determine the cause of each exception and then transfer control to an appropriate exception routine. Figure 3–2 shows an example of the process used to determine the exception source.

![Diagram](image)

If the EPIE bit of the `estatus` register (`ctl1`) is 1 and the value of the `ipending` register (`ctl4`) is non-zero, the exception was caused by an external hardware interrupt. Otherwise, the exception might be caused by a software trap or an unimplemented instruction. To distinguish between software traps and unimplemented instructions, read the instruction at address `ea–4` (the Nios II data master must have access to the code memory to read this address). If the instruction is `trap`, the
exception is a software trap. If the instruction at address $ea-4$ is one of the instructions that can be implemented in software, the exception was caused by an unimplemented instruction. See “Potential Unimplemented Instructions” on page 3–21 for details. If none of the above conditions apply, the exception type is unrecognized, and the exception handler should report the condition.

**Nested Exceptions**

Exception routines must take special precautions before:

- Issuing a trap instruction
- Issuing an unimplemented instruction
- Re-enabling hardware interrupts

Before allowing any of these actions, the exception routine must save $estatus (ct11)$ and $ea (r29)$, so that they can be restored properly before returning.

**Returning from an Exception**

The $eret$ instruction is used to resume execution from the pre-exception address. Except for the $et$ register ($r24$), the exception routine must restore any registers modified during exception processing before returning.

When executing the $eret$ instruction, the processor:

1. Copies the contents of $estatus (ct11)$ to $status (ct10)$
2. Transfers program execution to the address in the $ea$ register ($r29$)

**Return Address**

The return address requires some consideration when returning from exception processing routines. After an exception occurs, $ea$ contains the address of the instruction after the point where the exception was generated.

When returning from software trap and unimplemented instruction exceptions, execution must resume from the instruction following the software trap or unimplemented instruction. Therefore, $ea$ contains the correct return address.

On the other hand, hardware interrupt exceptions must resume execution from the interrupted instruction itself. In this case, the exception handler must subtract 4 from $ea$ to point to the interrupted instruction.
A break is a transfer of control away from a program’s normal flow of execution caused by a break instruction or the JTAG debug module. Software debugging tools can take control of the Nios II processor via the JTAG debug module. Only debugging tools control the processor when executing in debug mode; application and system code never execute in this mode.

Break processing is the means by which software debugging tools implement debug and diagnostic features, such as breakpoints and watchpoints. Break processing is similar to exception processing, but the break mechanism is independent from exception processing. A break can occur during exception processing, enabling debug tools to debug exception handlers.

### Processing a Break

The processor enters the break processing state under the following conditions:

- The processor issues the break instruction
- The JTAG debug module asserts a hardware break

A break causes the processor to take the following steps:

1. Stores the contents of the status register (ctl0) to bstatus (ctl2)
2. Clears the PIE bit of the status register, disabling external processor interrupts
3. Writes the address of the instruction following the break to the ba register (r30).
4. Transfers execution to the address of the break handler. The address of the break handler is specified at system generation time.

### Returning from a Break

After performing break processing, the debugging tool releases control of the processor by executing a bret instruction. The bret instruction restores status and returns program execution to the address in ba.

### Register Usage

The break handler can use bt (r25) to help save additional registers. Aside from bt, all other registers are guaranteed to be returned to their pre-break state after returning from the break-processing routine.
Nios II addresses are 32 bits, allowing access up to a 4 gigabyte address space. However, many Nios II core implementations restrict addresses to 31 bits or fewer.

For details, refer to the Nios II Core Implementation Details chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.

Peripherals, data memory, and program memory are mapped into the same address space. The locations of memory and peripherals within the address space are determined at system generation time. Reading or writing to an address that does not map to a memory or peripheral produces an undefined result.

The processor’s data bus is 32 bits wide. Instructions are available to read and write byte, half-word (16-bit), or word (32-bit) data.

The Nios II architecture is little endian. For data wider than 8-bits stored in memory, the more-significant bits are located in higher addresses.

Addressing Modes

The Nios II architecture supports the following addressing modes:

- Register addressing
- Displacement addressing
- Immediate addressing
- Register indirect addressing
- Absolute addressing

In register addressing, all operands are registers, and results are stored back to a register. In displacement addressing, the address is calculated as the sum of a register and a signed, 16-bit immediate value. In immediate addressing, the operand is a constant within the instruction itself. Register indirect addressing uses displacement addressing, but the displacement is the constant 0. Limited-range absolute addressing is achieved by using displacement addressing with register r0, whose value is always 0x00.

Cache Memory

The Nios II architecture and instruction set accommodate the presence of data cache and instruction cache memories. Cache management is implemented in software by using cache management instructions.
Instructions are provided to initialize the cache, flush the caches whenever necessary, and to bypass the data cache to properly access memory-mapped peripherals.

Some Nios II processor cores support a mechanism called bit-31 cache bypass to bypass the cache depending on the value of the most-significant bit of the address. The address space of these processor implementations is 2 GBytes, and the high bit of the address controls the caching of data memory accesses.

Refer to the *Nios II Core Implementation Details* chapter of the *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook* for complete details of which processor cores support bit-31 cache bypass.

Code written for a processor core with cache memory behaves correctly on a processor core without cache memory. The reverse is not true. Therefore, for a program to work properly on all Nios II processor core implementations, the program must behave as if the instruction and data caches exist. In systems without cache memory, the cache management instructions perform no operation, and their effects are benign.

For a complete discussion of cache management, see the *Cache & Tightly Coupled Memory* chapter of the *Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook*.

Some consideration is necessary to ensure cache coherency after processor reset. See “Processor Reset State” on page 3–13 for details.

For details on the cache architecture and the memory hierarchy see the *Processor Architecture* chapter of the *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook*.

**Processor Reset State**

After reset, the Nios II processor:

1. Clears the status register to 0x0.

2. Invalidates the instruction-cache line associated with the *reset address*, the address of the reset routine.

3. Begins executing from the reset address.

Clearing status (ctl0) disables hardware interrupts. Invalidating the reset cache line guarantees that instruction fetches for reset code comes from uncached memory. The reset address is specified at system generation time.
Aside from the instruction-cache line associated with the reset address, the contents of the cache memories are indeterminate after reset. To ensure cache coherency after reset, the reset routine must immediately initialize the instruction cache. Next, either the reset routine or a subsequent routine should proceed to initialize the data cache.

The reset state is undefined for all other system components, including but not limited to:

- General-purpose registers, except for zero (r0) which is permanently zero.
- Control registers, except for status (ctl0) which is reset to 0x0.
- Instruction and data memory.
- Cache memory, except for the instruction-cache line associated with the reset address.
- Peripherals. Refer to the appropriate peripheral data sheet or specification for reset conditions.
- Custom instruction logic. Refer to the custom instruction specification for reset conditions.

Instruction Set Categories

This section introduces the Nios II instructions categorized by type of operation performed.

Data Transfer Instructions

The Nios II architecture is a load-store architecture. Load and store instructions handle all data movement between registers, memory, and peripherals. Memories and peripherals share a common address space. Some Nios II processor cores use memory caching and/or write buffering to improve memory bandwidth. The architecture provides instructions for both cached and uncached accesses.
Table 3–4 describes the wide (32-bit) load and store instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ldw, stw</td>
<td>The ldw and stw instructions load and store 32-bit data words from/to memory. The effective address is the sum of a register's contents and a signed immediate value contained in the instruction. Memory transfers can be cached or buffered to improve program performance. This caching and buffering might cause memory cycles to occur out of order, and caching might suppress some cycles entirely. Data transfers for I/O peripherals should use ldwio and stwio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldwio, stwio</td>
<td>ldwio and stwio instructions load and store 32-bit data words from/to peripherals without caching and buffering. Access cycles for ldwio and stwio instructions are guaranteed to occur in instruction order and are never suppressed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The data transfer instructions in Table 3–5 support byte and half-word transfers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ldb, ldbu, ldh, ldhu</td>
<td>ldb, ldbu, ldh and ldhu load a byte or half-word from memory to a register. ldb and ldh sign-extend the value to 32 bits, and ldbu and ldhu zero-extend the value to 32 bits. stb and sth store byte and half-word values, respectively. Memory accesses can be cached or buffered to improve performance. To transfer data to I/O peripherals, use the “io” versions of the instructions, described below.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldbio, ldbuio, stbio, ldhio, ldhuio, sthio</td>
<td>These operations load/store byte and half-word data from/to peripherals without caching or buffering.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Arithmetic & Logical Instructions

Logical instructions support `and`, `or`, `xor`, and `nor` operations. Arithmetic instructions support addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division operations. See Table 3–6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>and</code></td>
<td>These are the standard 32-bit logical operations. These operations take two register values and combine them bit-wise to form a result for a third register.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>or</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xor</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>nor</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>andi</code></td>
<td>These operations are immediate versions of the <code>and</code>, <code>or</code>, and <code>xor</code> instructions. The 16-bit immediate value is zero-extended to 32 bits, and then combined with a register value to form the result.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ori</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xori</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>andhi</code></td>
<td>In these versions of <code>and</code>, <code>or</code>, and <code>xor</code>, the 16-bit immediate value is shifted logically left by 16 bits to form a 32-bit operand. Zeroes are shifted in from the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>orhi</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>xorhi</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>add</code></td>
<td>These are the standard 32-bit arithmetic operations. These operations take two registers as input and store the result in a third register.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sub</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mul</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>div</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>divu</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>addi</code></td>
<td>These instructions are immediate versions of the <code>add</code>, <code>sub</code>, and <code>mul</code> instructions. The instruction word includes a 16-bit signed value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>subi</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>muli</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mulxss</code></td>
<td>These instructions provide access to the upper 32 bits of a 32x32 multiplication operation. Choose the appropriate instruction depending on whether the operands should be treated as signed or unsigned values. It is not necessary to precede these instructions with a <code>mul</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mulxuu</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mulxsu</code></td>
<td>This instruction is used in computing a 128-bit result of a 64x64 signed multiplication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Move Instructions

These instructions provide move operations to copy the value of a register or an immediate value to another register. See Table 3–7.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mov</td>
<td>mov copies the value of one register to another register. movi moves a 16-bit signed immediate value to a register, and sign-extends the value to 32 bits. movui and movhi move an immediate 16-bit value into the lower or upper 16-bits of a register, inserting zeros in the remaining bit positions. Use movia to load a register with an address.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comparison Instructions

The Nios II architecture supports a number of comparison instructions. All of these compare two registers or a register and an immediate value, and write either 1 (if true) or 0 to the result register. These instructions perform all the equality and relational operators of the C programming language. See Table 3–8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cmpeq</td>
<td>==</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpne</td>
<td>!=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpge</td>
<td>signed &gt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgeu</td>
<td>unsigned &gt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgt</td>
<td>signed &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgtu</td>
<td>unsigned &gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmple</td>
<td>unsigned &lt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpleu</td>
<td>unsigned &lt;=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmplte</td>
<td>signed &lt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Instruction Set Categories

### Table 3–8. Comparison Instructions  (Part 2 of 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cmpltu</td>
<td>unsigned &lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpeqi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpnei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgeui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpltui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmplei</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpleui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmplti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpltui</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These instructions are immediate versions of the comparison operations. They compare the value of a register and a 16-bit immediate value. Signed operations sign-extend the immediate value to 32-bits. Unsigned operations fill the upper bits with zero.

### Shift & Rotate Instructions

The following instructions provide shift and rotate operations. The number of bits to rotate or shift can be specified in a register or an immediate value. See Table 3–9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ror</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The rol and roli instructions provide left bit-rotation. roli uses an immediate value to specify the number of bits to rotate. The ror instructions provide right bit-rotation. There is no immediate version of ror, because roli can be used to implement the equivalent operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sll</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>slli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srai</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>srli</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These shift instructions implement the << and >> operators of the C programming language. The sll, slli, srl, srli instructions provide left and right logical bit-shifting operations, inserting zeros. The sra and srai instructions provide arithmetic right bit-shifting, duplicating the sign bit in the most significant bit. slli, srli and srai use an immediate value to specify the number of bits to shift.
Program Control Instructions

The Nios II architecture supports the unconditional jump and call instructions listed in Table 3–10. These instructions do not have delay slots.

### Table 3–10. Unconditional Jump & Call Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>This instruction calls a subroutine using an immediate value as the subroutine's absolute address, and stores the return address in register ra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callr</td>
<td>This instruction calls a subroutine at the absolute address contained in a register, and stores the return address in register ra. This instruction serves the role of dereferencing a C function pointer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ret</td>
<td>The ret instruction is used to return from subroutines called by call or callr. ret loads and executes the instruction specified by the address in register ra.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jmp</td>
<td>The jmp instruction jumps to an absolute address contained in a register. jmp is used to implement switch statements of the C programming language.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>br</td>
<td>Branch relative to the current instruction. A signed immediate value gives the offset of the next instruction to execute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The conditional-branch instructions compare register values directly, and branch if the expression is true. See Table 3–11. The conditional branches support the equality and relational comparisons of the C programming language:

- == and !=
- < and <= (signed and unsigned)
- > and >= (signed and unsigned)

The conditional-branch instructions do not have delay slots.

### Table 3–11. Conditional-Branch Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bge</td>
<td>These instructions provide relative branches that compare two register values and branch if the expression is true. See “Comparison Instructions” on page 3–17 for a description of the relational operations implemented.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bgeu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bgt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bgtu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ble</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bltu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beq</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Other Control Instructions

Table 3–12 shows other control instructions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>trap</strong></td>
<td>The <code>trap</code> and <code>eret</code> instructions generate and return from exceptions. These instructions are similar to the call/ret pair, but are used for exceptions. <code>trap</code> saves the status register in the <code>estatus</code> register, saves the return address in the <code>ea</code> register, and then transfers execution to the exception handler. <code>eret</code> returns from exception processing by restoring <code>status</code> from <code>estatus</code>, and executing the instruction specified by the address in <code>ea</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>break</strong></td>
<td>The <code>break</code> and <code>bret</code> instructions generate and return from breaks. <code>break</code> and <code>bret</code> are used exclusively by software debugging tools. Programmers never use these instructions in application code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>rdctl</strong></td>
<td>These instructions read and write control registers, such as the <code>status</code> register. The value is read from or stored to a general-purpose register.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>wrctl</strong></td>
<td>These instructions are used to manage the data and instruction cache memories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>flushd</strong></td>
<td>These instructions are used to manage the data and instruction cache memories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>flushi</strong></td>
<td>These instructions are used to manage the data and instruction cache memories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>initd</strong></td>
<td>These instructions are used to manage the data and instruction cache memories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>initi</strong></td>
<td>These instructions are used to manage the data and instruction cache memories.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>flushp</strong></td>
<td>This instruction flushes all pre-fetched instructions from the pipeline. This is necessary before jumping to recently-modified instruction memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sync</strong></td>
<td>This instruction ensures that all previously-issued operations have completed before allowing execution of subsequent load and store operations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Custom Instructions

The custom instruction provides low-level access to custom instruction logic. The inclusion of custom instructions is specified at system generation time, and the function implemented by custom instruction logic is design dependent.

For further details, see the “Custom Instructions” section of the Processor Architecture chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook and the Nios II Custom Instruction User Guide.

Machine-generated C functions and assembly macros provide access to custom instructions, and hide implementation details from the user. Therefore, most software developers never use the custom assembly instruction directly.

No-Operation Instruction

The Nios II assembler provides a no-operation instruction, `nop`.

Table 3–12. Other Control Instructions
Potential Unimplemented Instructions

Some Nios II processor cores do not support all instructions in hardware. In this case, the processor generates an exception after issuing an unimplemented instruction. Only the following instructions can generate an unimplemented-instruction exception:

- `mul`
- `muli`
- `mulxss`
- `mulxsu`
- `mulxuu`
- `div`
- `divu`

All other instructions are guaranteed not to generate an unimplemented-instruction exception.

An exception routine must exercise caution if it uses these instructions, because they could generate another exception before the previous exception is properly handled. See “Unimplemented Instruction” on page 3–8 for details regarding unimplemented instruction processing.

Document Revision History

Table 3–13 shows the revision history for this document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2006, v6.0.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2005, v5.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2005, v5.0.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2004, v1.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Added details for new control register <code>ctl5</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Updated details of debug mode and break processing to reflect new behavior of the <code>break</code> instruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2004, v1.0</td>
<td>First publication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Implementing the Nios II Processor in SOPC Builder

Introduction

This chapter describes the Nios® II configuration wizard in SOPC Builder. The Nios II configuration wizard allows you to specify the processor features for a particular Nios II hardware system. This chapter covers only the features of the Nios II processor that you can configure with the Nios II configuration wizard. It is not a user guide for creating complete Nios II processor systems.

To get started using SOPC Builder to design custom Nios II systems, refer to the Nios II Hardware Development Tutorial. Nios II development kits also provide a number of ready-made example hardware designs that demonstrate several different configurations of the Nios II processor.

The Nios II processor configuration wizard has several tabs. The following sections describe the settings available on each tab.

Due to evolution and improvement of the Nios II configuration wizard, the figures in this chapter might not match the exact screens that appear in SOPC Builder.
Nios II Core Tab

The Nios II Core tab presents the main settings for configuring the Nios II processor core. Figure 4–1 shows an example of the Nios II Core tab.

Figure 4–1. Nios II Core Tab in the Nios II Configuration Wizard

![Alt text]

Core Setting

The main purpose of the Nios II Core tab is to select the processor core. The core you select on this tab affects other options available on this and other tabs.

Currently, Altera® offers three Nios II cores:

- **Nios II/f**—The Nios II/f “fast” core is designed for fast performance. As a result, this core presents the most configuration options allowing you to fine-tune the processor for performance.

- **Nios II/s**—The Nios II/s “standard” core is designed for small size while maintaining performance.

- **Nios II/e**—The Nios II/e “economy” core is designed to achieve the smallest possible core size. As a result, this core has a limited feature set, and many settings are not available when the Nios II/e core is selected.

As shown in Figure 4–1, the Nios II Core tab displays a “selector guide” table that lists the basic properties of each core.
For complete details of each core, see the *Nios II Core Implementation Details* chapter of the *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook*.

**Multiply & Divide Settings**

The Nios II/s and Nios II/f cores offer different hardware multiply and divide options. You can choose the best option to balance embedded multiplier usage, logic element (LE) usage, and performance.

The **Hardware Multiply** setting provides the following options:

- Include embedded multipliers (e.g., the DSP blocks in Stratix® devices) in the arithmetic logic unit (ALU). This is the default when targeting devices that have embedded multipliers.
- Include LE-based multipliers in the ALU. This option achieves high multiply performance without consuming embedded multiplier resources.
- Omit hardware multiply. This option conserves logic resources by eliminating multiply hardware. Multiply operations are implemented in software.

Turning on the **Hardware Divide** setting includes LE-based divide hardware in the ALU. The **Hardware Divide** option achieves much greater performance than software emulation of divide operations.

For details on the effects of the **Hardware Multiply** and **Hardware Divide** options on performance, see the *Nios II Core Implementation Details* chapter of the *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook*. 
Caches & Tightly Coupled Memories Tab

The Caches & Tightly Coupled Memories tab allows you to configure the cache and tightly coupled memory usage for the instruction and data buses. Figure 4–2 shows an example of the Caches & Tightly Coupled Memories tab.

Figure 4–2. Caches & Tightly Coupled Memories Tab in the Nios II Configuration Wizard

Instruction Settings

The Instruction settings provide the following options for the Nios II/f and Nios II/s cores:

- **Instruction Cache** - Specifies the size of the instruction cache. Valid sizes are from 512 bytes to 64 Kbytes, or **None**.

  Choosing **None** disables the instruction cache, which also removes the Avalon instruction master port from the Nios II core. In this case, you must include a tightly coupled instruction memory.

- **Include tightly coupled instruction master port(s)** - When turned on, the Nios II core includes tightly coupled memory ports. You can specify one to four ports with the **Number of ports** setting. Tightly coupled memory ports appear on the connection panel of the Nios II core in the SOPC Builder System Contents tab. You must connect each port to exactly one memory component in the system.
Implementing the Nios II Processor in SOPC Builder

Data Settings

The Data settings provide the following options for the Nios II/f core:

- **Data Cache** - Specifies the size of the data cache. Valid sizes are from 512 bytes to 64 Kbytes, or None. Depending on the value specified for Data Cache, the following options are available:
  - **Data Cache Line Size** - Valid sizes are 4, 16, or 32 bytes.
  - **Omit data master port** - If you set Data Cache to None, you can optionally turn on Omit data master port to remove the Avalon data master port from the Nios II core. In this case, you must include a tightly coupled data memory.

- **Include tightly coupled data master port(s)** - When turned on, the Nios II core includes tightly coupled memory ports. You can specify one to four ports with the Number of ports setting. Tightly coupled memory ports appear on the connection panel of the Nios II core in the SOPC Builder System Contents tab. You must connect each port to exactly one memory component in the system.

Advanced Features Tab

The Advanced Features tab allows you to enable specialized features of the Nios II processor. It contains one option: Include cpu_resetrequest and cpu_resettaken signals. This option adds processor-only reset request signals to the Nios II processor. These signals let another device individually reset the Nios II processor without resetting the entire SOPC Builder system. The signals are exported to the top level of your SOPC Builder system.

Figure 4–3 on page 4–6 shows the Advanced Features tab.
JTAG Debug Module Tab

Figure 4–3. Advanced Features Tab in the Nios II Configuration Wizard

For further details on the processor-only reset request signals, refer to the Processor Architecture chapter in the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.

The JTAG Debug Module tab presents settings for configuring the JTAG debug module on the Nios II core. You can select the debug features appropriate for your target application.

Soft-core processors such as the Nios II processor offer unique debug capabilities beyond the features of traditional-fixed processors. The soft-core nature of the Nios II processor allows you to debug a system in development using a full-featured debug core, and later remove the debug features to conserve logic resources. For the release version of a product, you might choose to reduce the JTAG debug module functionality, or remove it altogether.
Table 4–1 describes the debug features available to you for debugging your system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JTAG Target Connection</td>
<td>The ability to connect to the processor through the standard JTAG pins on the Altera FPGA. This provides the basic capabilities to start and stop the processor, and examine/edit registers and memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download Software</td>
<td>The ability to download executable code to the processor's memory via the JTAG connection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Breakpoints</td>
<td>The ability to set a breakpoint on instructions residing in RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Breakpoints</td>
<td>The ability to set a breakpoint on instructions residing in nonvolatile memory, such as flash memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Triggers</td>
<td>The ability to trigger based on address value, data value, or read or write cycle. You can use a trigger to halt the processor on specific events or conditions, or to activate other events, such as starting execution trace, or sending a trigger signal to an external logic analyzer. Two data triggers can be combined to form a trigger that activates on a range of data or addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction Trace</td>
<td>The ability to capture the sequence of instructions executing on the processor in real time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Trace</td>
<td>The ability to capture the addresses and data associated with read and write operations executed by the processor in real time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On-Chip Trace</td>
<td>The ability to store trace data in on-chip memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-Chip Trace</td>
<td>The ability to store trace data in an external debug probe. Off-chip trace requires a debug probe from First Silicon Solutions (FS2).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Debug Level Settings

There are five debug levels in the JTAG Debug Module tab as shown in Figure 4–4.

Table 4–2 on page 4–9 is a detailed list of the characteristics of each debug level. Different levels consume different amounts of on-chip resources. Certain Nios II cores have restricted debug options, and certain options require debug tools provided by First Silicon Solutions (FS2).
For details on the Nios II debug features available from FS2, visit www.fs2.com.

### Table 4–2. JTAG Debug Module Levels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Debug Feature</th>
<th>No Debug</th>
<th>Level 1</th>
<th>Level 2</th>
<th>Level 3</th>
<th>Level 4 (1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logic Usage</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>300 - 400 LEs</td>
<td>800 - 900 LEs</td>
<td>2,400 - 2,700 LEs</td>
<td>3,100 - 3,700 LEs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On-Chip Memory Usage</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Two M4Ks</td>
<td>Two M4Ks</td>
<td>Four M4Ks</td>
<td>Four M4Ks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External I/O Pins Required (2)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG Target Connection</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Download Software</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Breakpoints</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
<td>Unlimited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Execution Breakpoints</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Triggers</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On-Chip Trace</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Up to 64K Frames (3)</td>
<td>Up to 64K Frames</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-Chip Trace (4)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>128K Frames</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes to Table 4–2:**

1. Level 4 requires the purchase of a software upgrade from FS2.
2. Not including the dedicated JTAG pins on the Altera FPGA.
3. An additional license from FS2 is required to use more than 16 frames.
4. Off-chip trace requires the purchase of additional hardware from FS2.

### On-Chip Trace Buffer Settings

Debug levels 3 and 4 support trace data collection into an on-chip memory buffer. The on-chip trace buffer size can be set to sizes from 128 to 64K trace frames.

Larger buffer sizes consume more on-chip M4K RAM blocks. Every M4K RAM block can store up to 128 trace frames.
The **Custom Instructions** tab allows you to connect custom instruction logic to the Nios II arithmetic logic unit (ALU). You can achieve significant performance improvements—often on the order of 10x to 100x—by implementing performance-critical operations in hardware using custom-instruction logic. Figure 4–5 shows an example of the Custom Instructions tab.

Figure 4–5. Custom Instructions Tab in the Nios II Configuration Wizard

To add a custom instruction to the Nios II processor, select the custom instruction from the **Library** list at the left side of the dialog box, and click **Add**.

A complete discussion of the hardware and software design process for custom instructions is beyond the scope of this chapter. For full details on the topic of custom instructions, including working example designs, see the *Nios II Custom Instruction User Guide*.

**Floating-Point Custom Instructions**

The Nios II core offers a set of optional predefined custom instructions that implement floating-point arithmetic operations. You can choose to include these custom instructions to support computation-intensive floating-point applications.
The basic set of floating-point custom instructions includes single precision (32-bit) floating-point addition, subtraction, and multiplication. Floating-point division is available as an extension to the basic instruction set. The best choice for your hardware design depends on a balance among floating-point usage, hardware resource usage, and performance.

To add the floating-point custom instructions to the Nios II processor, select Floating Point Hardware from the Library list, and click Add.

**Figure 4–6. Nios II Floating Point Hardware Dialog Box**

The Nios II Floating Point Hardware dialog box, shown in Figure 4–6, provides one option: Use floating point division hardware. If you leave this check box off, SOPC Builder omits floating-point division from the Nios II processor, while including addition, subtraction, and multiplication. The floating-point division hardware requires more resources than the other instructions, so you might wish to omit it if your application does not make heavy use of floating-point division.

Click Finish to add the floating point custom instructions to the Nios II processor.

If the target device includes on-chip multiplier blocks, the floating-point custom instructions incorporates them as needed. If there are no on-chip multiplier blocks, the floating-point custom instructions are entirely based on general-purpose logic elements.

The opcode extensions for the floating-point custom instructions are 252 through 255 (0xFC through 0xFF). These opcode extensions cannot be modified.
For details on floating-point instruction usage in the Nios II Embedded Design Suite (EDS), see the tutorial *Using Nios II Floating-Point Custom Instructions.*

**Interrupt Vector Custom Instruction**

The Nios II processor core offers an interrupt vector custom instruction which reduces average and worst case interrupt latency.

To add the interrupt vector custom instruction to the Nios II processor, select **Nios II Interrupt Vector Instruction** from the *Library* list, and click **Add**.

There can only be one interrupt vector custom instruction component in a Nios II processor. If the interrupt vector custom instruction is present in the Nios II processor, the hardware abstraction layer (HAL) source detects it at compile time and generates code using the custom instruction.

The interrupt vector custom instruction improves both average and worst-case interrupt latency by up to 20%. To achieve the lowest possible interrupt latency, consider using tightly-coupled memories so that interrupt handlers can run without cache misses.

For details of the interrupt vector custom instruction implementation, see the *Exception & Interrupt Controller* section in the *Processor Architecture* chapter of the *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook*. For guidance with tightly-coupled memories, see the *Tightly Coupled Memory* section in the *Processor Architecture* chapter of the *Nios II Processor Reference Handbook*.

**System-Dependent Nios II Processor Settings**

The Nios II processor core has settings which cannot be configured until other system components are in place. These settings include:

- Reset Address
- Exception Address
- Break Location

These settings are not in the Nios II processor configuration wizard. They are grouped in the *More “Nios II module name” Settings* tab in SOPC Builder, as shown in Figure 4–7 on page 4–13.
The following sections describe each system-dependent setting.

**Reset Address**

You can select the memory module where the reset code (boot loader) resides, and the location of the reset vector (reset address).

**Memory Module**

You can select the reset memory module from a drop-down list, which includes all memory modules mastered by the Nios II processor. In a typical system, you select a nonvolatile memory module for the reset code.

**Offset**

You can edit the offset field to specify the location of the reset vector relative to the memory module’s base address.
System-Dependent Nios II Processor Settings

Address
SOPC Builder calculates the physical address of the reset vector when you modify the memory module, the offset, or the memory module’s base address. You cannot edit the Address field.

Exception Address
You can select the memory module where the exception vector (exception address) resides, and the location of the exception vector.

Memory Module
You can select the exception vector memory module from a drop-down list, which includes all memory modules mastered by the Nios II processor. In a typical system, you select a low-latency memory module for the exception code.

Offset
You can edit the offset field to specify the location of the exception vector relative to the memory module’s base address.

Address
SOPC Builder calculates the physical address of the exception vector when you modify the memory module, the offset, or the memory module’s base address. You cannot edit the Address field.

Break Location
If the Nios II processor core contains a JTAG debug module, SOPC Builder displays the break vector (break location). Memory Module is always the JTAG debug module. Offset is fixed at 0x20, and Address is determined by the base address of the JTAG debug module. You cannot modify any of the Break Location fields.
Table 4–3 shows the revision history for this document.

Table 4–3. Document Revision History

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>● Add section on interrupt vector custom instruction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● Add section on system-dependent Nios II processor settings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2006, v6.0.0</td>
<td>● Added details on floating point custom instructions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● Added section on Advanced Features tab.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2005, v5.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2005, v5.0.0</td>
<td>● Updates to reflect new GUI options in Nios II processor version 5.0.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● New details in “Caches and Tightly Coupled Memory” section.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2004, v1.1</td>
<td>● Updates to reflect new GUI options in Nios II processor version 1.1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● New details in section “Multiply and Divide Settings.”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2004, v1.0</td>
<td>First publication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This section provides additional information about the Nios® II processor.

This section includes the following chapters:

■ Chapter 5, Nios II Core Implementation Details
■ Chapter 6, Nios II Processor Revision History
■ Chapter 7, Application Binary Interface
■ Chapter 8, Instruction Set Reference
5. Nios II Core Implementation Details

Introduction

This document describes all of the Nios® II processor core implementations available at the time of publishing. This document describes only implementation-specific features of each processor core. All cores support the Nios II instruction set architecture.

For more information regarding the Nios II instruction set architecture, refer to the Instruction Set Reference chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook.

For details on a specific core, see the appropriate section for that core:

- “Nios II/f Core” on page 5–3
- “Nios II/s Core” on page 5–12
- “Nios II/e Core” on page 5–18

Table 5–1 compares the objectives and features of each Nios II processor core. The table is designed to help system designers choose the core that best suits their target application.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Core</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objective</strong></td>
<td>Nios II/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Performance</strong></td>
<td>DMIPS/MHz (1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. DMIPS (2)</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. fMAX (2)</td>
<td>200 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Area</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pipeline</strong></td>
<td>1 Stage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>External Address Space</strong></td>
<td>2 Gbytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Instruction Bus</strong></td>
<td>Cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pipelined Memory Access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Branch Prediction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tightly Coupled Memory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5–1. Nios II Processor Cores  (Part 2 of 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Core</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nios II/e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Bus</td>
<td>Cache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipelined Memory Access</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cache Bypass Methods</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tightly Coupled Memory</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arithmetic Logic Unit</td>
<td>Hardware Multiply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Divide</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shifter</td>
<td>1 Cycle-per-bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTAG Debug Module</td>
<td>JTAG interface, run control, software breakpoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Breakpoints</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Off-Chip Trace Buffer</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exception Handling</td>
<td>Exception Types</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integrated Interrupt Controller</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Mode Support</td>
<td>No; Permanently in supervisor mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom Instruction Support</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Table 5–1:

1. DMIPS performance for the Nios II/s and Nios II/f cores depends on the hardware multiply option.
2. Using the fastest hardware multiply option, and targeting a Stratix II FPGA in the fastest speed grade.
3. Multiply and shift performance depends on which hardware multiply option is used. If no hardware multiply option is used, multiply operations are emulated in software, and shift operations require one cycle per bit. For details, see the arithmetic logic unit description for each core.

Device Family Support

All Nios II cores provide the same support for target Altera device families. Nios II cores provide either full or preliminary device family support, as described below:

- *Full support* means the Nios II cores meet all functional and timing requirements for the device family and may be used in production designs.
Preliminary support means the Nios II cores meet all functional requirements, but may still be undergoing timing analysis for the device family; they may be used in production designs with caution.

Table 5–2 shows the level of support offered to each of the Altera device families by the Nios II cores.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Family</th>
<th>Support</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stratix® III</td>
<td>Preliminary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stratix II</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stratix II GX</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stratix GX</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stratix</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardcopy® II</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HardCopy</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclone™ II</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclone</td>
<td>Full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other device families</td>
<td>No support</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nios II/f Core

The Nios II/f “fast” core is designed for high execution performance. Performance is gained at the expense of core size, making the Nios II/f core approximately 25% larger than the Nios II/s core. Altera designed the Nios II/f core with the following design goals in mind:

- Maximize the instructions-per-cycle execution efficiency
- Maximize fMAX performance of the processor core

The resulting core is optimal for performance-critical applications, as well as for applications with large amounts of code and/or data, such as systems running a full-featured operating system.

Overview

The Nios II/f core:

- Has separate instruction and data caches
- Can access up to 2 GBytes of external address space
- Supports optional tightly coupled memory for instructions and data
- Employs a 6-stage pipeline to achieve maximum DMIPS/MHz
- Performs dynamic branch prediction
Nios II/f Core

- Provides hardware multiply, divide, and shift options to improve arithmetic performance
- Supports the addition of custom instructions
- Supports the JTAG debug module
- Supports optional JTAG debug module enhancements, including hardware breakpoints and real-time trace

The following sections discuss the noteworthy details of the Nios II/f core implementation. This document does not discuss low-level design issues or implementation details that do not affect Nios II hardware or software designers.

Register File

At system generation time, the cpuid control register (clt5) is assigned a value that is guaranteed to be unique for each processor in the system.

Arithmetic Logic Unit

The Nios II/f core provides several arithmetic logic unit (ALU) options to improve the performance of multiply, divide, and shift operations.

Multiply & Divide Performance

The Nios II/f core provides the following hardware multiplier options:

- **No hardware multiply** — Does not include multiply hardware. In this case, multiply operations are emulated in software.
- **Use embedded multipliers** — Includes dedicated embedded multipliers available on the target device. This option is available only on Altera FPGAs that have embedded multipliers, such as the DSP blocks in Stratix II FPGAs.
- **Use LE-based multipliers** — Includes hardware multipliers built from logic element (LE) resources.

The Nios II/f core also provides a hardware divide option that includes LE-based divide circuitry in the ALU.

Including an ALU option improves the performance of one or more arithmetic instructions.

The performance of the embedded multipliers differ, depending on the target FPGA family.
Table 5–3 lists the details of the hardware multiply and divide options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALU Option</th>
<th>Hardware Details</th>
<th>Cycles per Instruction</th>
<th>Result Latency Cycles</th>
<th>Supported Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No hardware multiply or divide</td>
<td>Multiply &amp; divide instructions generate an exception</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE-based multiplier</td>
<td>ALU includes 32 x 4-bit multiplier</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>mul, multi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedded multiplier on Stratix and Stratix II families</td>
<td>ALU includes 32 x 32-bit multiplier</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>mul, multi, mulxss, mulxsu, mulxuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedded multiplier on Cyclone II family</td>
<td>ALU includes 32 x 16-bit multiplier</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>mul, multi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware divide</td>
<td>ALU includes multicycle divide circuit</td>
<td>4 – 66</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>div, divu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The cycles per instruction value determines the maximum rate at which the ALU can dispatch instructions and produce each result. The latency value determines when the result becomes available. If there is no data dependency between the results and operands for back-to-back instructions, then the latency does not affect throughput. However, if an instruction depends on the result of an earlier instruction, then the processor stalls through any result latency cycles until the result is ready.

In the following code example, a multiply operation (with 1 instruction cycle and 2 result latency cycles) is followed immediately by an add operation that uses the result of the multiply. On the Nios II/f core, the addi instruction, like most ALU instructions, executes in a single cycle. However, in this code example, execution of the addi instruction is delayed by two additional cycles until the multiply operation completes.

```
mul r1, r2, r3 ; r1 = r2 * r3
addi r1, r1, 100 ; r1 = r1 + 100 (Depends on result of mul)
```

In contrast, the following code does not stall the processor.

```
mul r1, r2, r3 ; r1 = r2 * r3
or r5, r5, r6 ; No dependency on previous results
or r7, r7, r8 ; No dependency on previous results
addi r1, r1, 100 ; r1 = r1 + 100 (Depends on result of mul)
```
Shift & Rotate Performance

The performance of shift operations depends on the hardware multiply option. When a hardware multiplier is present, the ALU achieves shift and rotate operations in one or two clock cycles. Otherwise, the ALU includes dedicated shift circuitry that achieves one-bit-per-cycle shift and rotate performance. Refer to Table 5–5 on page 5–11 for details.

Memory Access

The Nios II/f core provides both instruction and data caches. The cache size for each is user-definable, between 512 bytes and 64 Kbytes. The Nios II/f core supports the bit-31 cache bypass method for accessing I/O on the data master port. Addresses are 31 bits wide to accommodate the bit-31 cache bypass method.

Instruction and Data Master Ports

The instruction and data master ports on the Nios II/f core are optional. A master port can be excluded, as long as the core includes at least one tightly coupled memory to take the place of the missing master port.

The instruction master port is a pipelined Avalon® master port. If the core includes data cache with a line size greater than four bytes, then the data master port is a pipelined Avalon master port. Otherwise, the data master port is not pipelined.

Support for pipelined Avalon transfers minimizes the impact of synchronous memory with pipeline latency. The pipelined instruction and data master ports can issue successive read requests before prior requests complete.

Instruction Cache

The instruction cache memory has the following characteristics:

- Direct-mapped cache implementation
- 32 bytes (8 words) per cache line
- The instruction master port reads an entire cache line at a time from memory, and issues one read per clock cycle.
- Critical word first

The instruction byte address is divided into the following fields:
The sizes of the line and tag fields depend on the size of the cache memory, but the offset field is always three bits (i.e., an 8-word line). The maximum instruction byte address size is 31 bits.

The instruction cache is optional. However, excluding instruction cache from the Nios II/f core requires that the core include at least one tightly coupled instruction memory.

Data Cache

The data cache memory has the following characteristics:

- Direct-mapped cache implementation
- Configurable line size of 4, 16, or 32 bytes
- The data master port reads an entire cache line at a time from memory, and issues one read per clock cycle.
- Write-back
- Write-allocate (i.e., store instructions that miss allocate the line for that address)

The data byte address is divided into the following fields:

```
. . . 2 1 0
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tag</th>
<th>line</th>
<th>offset</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

The size of the line and tag fields depend on the size of the cache memory. The size of the offset field depends on the line size. The maximum data byte address size is 31 bits.

The data cache is optional. If the data cache is excluded from the core, the data master port can also be excluded.

Cache Bypass

The normal method for bypassing the data cache is to use I/O load and store instructions that bypass the cache. In addition, the Nios II/f core also implements the bit-31 cache bypass method on the data master port. This method uses bit 31 of the address as a tag that indicates whether the processor should transfer data to/from cache, or bypass it. This is a convenience for software, which might need to cache certain addresses and bypass others. Software can pass addresses as parameters between functions, without having to specify any further information about whether the addressed data is cached or not.
Mixing Cached and Noncached Accesses
Mixing cached and noncached accesses to the same cache line can result in invalid data reads. For example, the following sequence of events causes cache incoherency.

1. The Nios II core writes data to cache, creating a dirty data cache line.
2. The Nios II core reads data from the same address, but bypasses the cache.

Software should not mix both cached and uncached accesses to the same cache line. If it is necessary to mix cached and uncached data accesses, flush the corresponding line of the data cache after completing the cached accesses and before performing the uncached accesses.

Tightly Coupled Memory
The Nios II/f core provides optional tightly-coupled memory interfaces for both instructions and data. A Nios II/f core can use up to four each of instruction and data tightly coupled memories. When a tightly-coupled memory interface is enabled, the Nios II core includes an additional memory interface master port. Each tightly-coupled memory interface must connect directly to exactly one memory slave port.

When tightly coupled memory is present, the Nios II core decodes addresses internally to determine if requested instructions or data reside in tightly coupled memory. If the address resides in tightly coupled memory, the Nios II core fetches the instruction or data through the tightly-coupled memory interface. Software accesses tightly coupled memory with the usual load and store instructions, such as \texttt{ldw} or \texttt{ldwio}.

Accessing tightly coupled memory bypasses cache memory. The processor core functions as if cache were not present for the address span of the tightly coupled memory. Instructions for managing cache, such as \texttt{initd} and \texttt{flushd}, do not affect the tightly coupled memory, even if the instruction specifies an address in tightly coupled memory.

Execution Pipeline
This section provides an overview of the pipeline behavior for the benefit of performance-critical applications. Designers can use this information to minimize unnecessary processor stalling. Most application programmers never need to analyze the performance of individual instructions.
The Nios II/f core employs a 6-stage pipeline. The pipeline stages are listed in Table 5–4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage Letter</th>
<th>Stage Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fetch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Decode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Align</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Writeback</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Up to one instruction is dispatched and/or retired per cycle. Instructions are dispatched and retired in-order. Dynamic branch prediction is implemented using a 2-bit branch history table. The pipeline stalls for the following conditions:

- Multi-cycle instructions
- Avalon instruction master port read accesses
- Avalon data master port read/write accesses
- Data dependencies on long latency instructions (e.g., load, multiply, shift).

**Pipeline Stalls**

The pipeline is set up so that if a stage stalls, no new values enter that stage or any earlier stages. No “catching up” of pipeline stages is allowed, even if a pipeline stage is empty.

Only the A-stage and D-stage are allowed to create stalls.

The A-stage stall occurs if any of the following conditions occurs:

- An A-stage memory instruction is waiting for Avalon data master requests to complete. Typically this happens when a load or store misses in the data cache, or a flushd instruction needs to write back a dirty line.
- An A-stage shift/rotate instruction is still performing its operation. This only occurs with the multi-cycle shift circuitry (i.e., when the hardware multiplier is not available).
- An A-stage divide instruction is still performing its operation. This only occurs when the optional divide circuitry is available.
An A-stage multi-cycle custom instruction is asserting its stall signal. This only occurs if the design includes multi-cycle custom instructions.

The D-stage stall occurs if the following condition occurs and no M-stage pipeline flush is active:

An instruction is trying to use the result of a late result instruction too early. The late result instructions are loads, shifts, rotates, rdctl, multiplies (if hardware multiply is supported), divides (if hardware divide is supported), and multi-cycle custom instructions (if present).

**Branch Prediction**

The Nios II/f core performs dynamic branch prediction to minimize the cycle penalty associated with taken branches.

**Instruction Performance**

All instructions take one or more cycles to execute. Some instructions have other penalties associated with their execution. Late result instructions have a two cycle bubble placed between them and an instruction that uses their result. Instructions that flush the pipeline cause up to three instructions after them to be cancelled. This creates a three-cycle penalty and an execution time of four cycles. Instructions that require Avalon transfers are stalled until any required Avalon transfers (up to one write and one read) are completed.
Execution performance for all instructions is shown in Table 5–5.

### Table 5–5. Instruction Execution Performance for Nios II/f Core

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
<th>Penalties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal ALU instructions (e.g., add, cmplt)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combinatorial custom instructions</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-cycle custom instructions</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch (correctly predicted, taken)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch (correctly predicted, not taken)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch (mis-predicted)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pipeline flush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trap, break, eret, bret, flushp, wrctl, and unimplemented instructions</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pipeline flush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jmp, ret, callr</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rdctl</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load (without Avalon transfer)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load (with Avalon transfer)</td>
<td>&gt; 1</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store, flushd (without Avalon transfer)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store, flushd (with Avalon transfer)</td>
<td>&gt; 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initd</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flushi, initi</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiply</td>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Divide</td>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift/rotate (with hardware multiply using embedded multipliers)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift/rotate (with hardware multiply using LE-based multipliers)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift/rotate (without hardware multiply present)</td>
<td>1 - 32</td>
<td>Late result</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other instructions</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note to Table 5–5:**

(1) Depends on the hardware multiply or divide option. See Table 5–3 on page 5 for details.

### Exception Handling

The Nios II/f core supports the following exception types:

- Hardware interrupt
- Software trap
- Unimplemented instruction
JTAG Debug Module

The Nios II/f core supports the JTAG debug module to provide a JTAG interface to software debugging tools. The Nios II/f core supports an optional enhanced interface that allows real-time trace data to be routed out of the processor and stored in an external debug probe.

Unsupported Features

The Nios II/f core does not handle the execution of instructions with undefined opcodes. If the processor issues an instruction word with an undefined opcode, the resulting behavior is undefined.

Nios II/s Core

The Nios II/s “standard” core is designed for small core size. On-chip logic and memory resources are conserved at the expense of execution performance. The Nios II/s core uses approximately 20% less logic than the Nios II/f core, but execution performance also drops by roughly 40%. Altera designed the Nios II/s core with the following design goals in mind:

■ Do not cripple performance for the sake of size.
■ Remove hardware features that have the highest ratio of resource usage to performance impact.

The resulting core is optimal for cost-sensitive, medium-performance applications. This includes applications with large amounts of code and/or data, such as systems running an operating system where performance is not the highest priority.

Overview

The Nios II/s core:

■ Has instruction cache, but no data cache
■ Can access up to 2 Gbytes of external address space
■ Supports optional tightly coupled memory for instructions
■ Employs a 5-stage pipeline
■ Performs static branch prediction
■ Provides hardware multiply, divide, and shift options to improve arithmetic performance
■ Supports the addition of custom instructions
■ Supports the JTAG debug module
■ Supports optional JTAG debug module enhancements, including hardware breakpoints and real-time trace
The following sections discuss the noteworthy details of the Nios II/s core implementation. This document does not discuss low-level design issues, or implementation details that do not affect Nios II hardware or software designers.

Register File

At system generation time, the cpuid control register (clt5) is assigned a value that is guaranteed to be unique for each processor in the system.

Arithmetic Logic Unit

The Nios II/s core provides several ALU options to improve the performance of multiply, divide, and shift operations.

Multiply & Divide Performance

The Nios II/s core provides the following hardware multiplier options:

- **No hardware multiply** – Does not include multiply hardware. In this case, multiply operations are emulated in software.
- **Use embedded multipliers** – Includes dedicated embedded multipliers available on the target device. This option is available only on Altera FPGAs that have embedded multipliers, such as the DSP blocks in Stratix II FPGAs.
- **Use LE-based multipliers** – Includes hardware multipliers built from logic element (LE) resources.

The Nios II/s core also provides a hardware divide option that includes LE-based divide circuitry in the ALU.

Including an ALU option improves the performance of one or more arithmetic instructions.

The performance of the embedded multipliers differ, depending on the target FPGA family.
Table 5–6 lists the details of the hardware multiply and divide options.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALU Option</th>
<th>Hardware Details</th>
<th>Cycles per instruction</th>
<th>Supported Instructions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No hardware multiply or divide</td>
<td>Multiply &amp; divide instructions generate an exception</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LE-based multiplier</td>
<td>ALU includes 32 x 4-bit multiplier</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>mul, muli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedded multiplier on Stratix and Stratix II families</td>
<td>ALU includes 32 x 32-bit multiplier</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>mul, muli, mulxss, mulxsu, mulxuu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Embedded multiplier on Cyclone II family</td>
<td>ALU includes 32 x 16-bit multiplier</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>mul, muli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware divide</td>
<td>ALU includes multicycle divide circuit</td>
<td>4 – 66</td>
<td>div, divu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Shift & Rotate Performance**

The performance of shift operations depends on the hardware multiply option. When a hardware multiplier is present, the ALU achieves shift and rotate operations in three or four clock cycles. Otherwise, the ALU includes dedicated shift circuitry that achieves one-bit-per-cycle shift and rotate performance. Refer to Table 5–8 on page 5–17 for details.

**Memory Access**

The Nios II/s core provides instruction cache, but no data cache. The instruction cache size is user-definable, between 512 bytes and 64 Kbytes. The Nios II/s core can address up to 2 Gbyte of external memory. The Nios II/s core does not support bit-31 data cache bypass. The most-significant bit of addresses is ignored.

**Instruction and Data Master Ports**

The instruction port on the Nios II/s core is optional. The instruction master port can be excluded, as long as the core includes at least one tightly-coupled instruction memory. The instruction master port is a pipelined Avalon master port.

Support for pipelined Avalon transfers minimizes the impact of synchronous memory with pipeline latency. The pipelined instruction master port can issue successive read requests before prior requests complete.
The data master port on the Nios II/s core is always present.

**Instruction Cache**

The instruction cache for the Nios II/s core is nearly identical to the instruction cache in the Nios II/f core. The instruction cache memory has the following characteristics:

- Direct-mapped cache implementation
- The instruction master port reads an entire cache line at a time from memory, and issues one read per clock cycle.
- Critical word first

The instruction byte address is divided into the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tag</th>
<th>line</th>
<th>offset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 4 3 2 1 0</td>
<td>0 0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The size of the line and tag fields depend on the size of the cache memory, but the offset field is always three bits (i.e., an 8-word line). The maximum instruction byte address size is 31 bits.

The instruction cache is optional. However, excluding instruction cache from the Nios II/s core requires that the core include at least one tightly coupled instruction memory.

**Tightly Coupled Memory**

The Nios II/s core provides optional tightly-coupled memory interfaces for instructions. A Nios II/s core can use up to four tightly coupled instruction memories. When a tightly-coupled memory interface is enabled, the Nios II core includes an additional memory interface master port. Each tightly-coupled memory interface must connect directly to exactly one memory slave port.

When tightly coupled memory is present, the Nios II core decodes addresses internally to determine if requested instructions reside in tightly coupled memory. If the address resides in tightly coupled memory, the Nios II core fetches the instruction through the tightly-coupled memory interface. Software does not require awareness of whether code resides in tightly coupled memory or not.
Accessing tightly coupled memory bypasses cache memory. The processor core functions as if cache were not present for the address span of the tightly coupled memory. Instructions for managing cache, such as \texttt{initi} and \texttt{flushi}, do not affect the tightly coupled memory, even if the instruction specifies an address in tightly coupled memory.

**Execution Pipeline**

This section provides an overview of the pipeline behavior for the benefit of performance-critical applications. Designers can use this information to minimize unnecessary processor stalling. Most application programmers never need to analyze the performance of individual instructions, and live happy lives without ever studying Table 5–7.

The Nios II/s core employs a 5-stage pipeline. The pipeline stages are listed in Table 5–7.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage Letter</th>
<th>Stage Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fetch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Decode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Writeback</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Up to one instruction is dispatched and/or retired per cycle. Instructions are dispatched and retired in-order. Static branch prediction is implemented using the branch offset direction; a negative offset is predicted as taken, and a positive offset is predicted as not-taken. The pipeline stalls for the following conditions:

- Multi-cycle instructions (e.g., shift/rotate without hardware multiply)
- Avalon instruction master port read accesses
- Avalon data master port read/write accesses
- Data dependencies on long latency instructions (e.g., load, multiply, shift operations)

**Pipeline Stalls**

The pipeline is set up so that if a stage stalls, no new values enter that stage or any earlier stages. No “catching up” of pipeline stages is allowed, even if a pipeline stage is empty.
Only the M-stage is allowed to create stalls.

The M-stage stall occurs if any of the following conditions occurs:

- An M-stage load/store instruction is waiting for Avalon data master transfer to complete.
- An M-stage shift/rotate instruction is still performing its operation when using the multi-cycle shift circuitry (i.e., when the hardware multiplier is not available).
- An M-stage shift/rotate/multiply instruction is still performing its operation when using the hardware multiplier (which takes three cycles).
- An M-stage multi-cycle custom instruction is asserting its stall signal. This only occurs if the design includes multi-cycle custom instructions.

**Branch Prediction**

The Nios II/s core performs static branch prediction to minimize the cycle penalty associated with taken branches.

**Instruction Performance**

All instructions take one or more cycles to execute. Some instructions have other penalties associated with their execution. Instructions that flush the pipeline cause up to three instructions after them to be cancelled. This creates a three-cycle penalty and an execution time of four cycles. Instructions that require an Avalon transfer are stalled until the transfer completes.

Execution performance for all instructions is shown in Table 5–8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
<th>Penalties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal ALU instructions (e.g., add, cmplt)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combinatorial custom instructions</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-cycle custom instructions</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch (correctly predicted taken)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch (correctly predicted not taken)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Branch (mispredicted)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pipeline flush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trap, break, eret, bret, flushp, wrctl, unimplemented</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pipeline flush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jmp, ret, call, callr</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pipeline flush</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Exception Handling**

The Nios II/s core supports the following exception types:

- Hardware interrupt
- Software trap
- Unimplemented instruction

**JTAG Debug Module**

The Nios II/s core supports the JTAG debug module to provide a JTAG interface to software debugging tools. The Nios II/s core supports an optional enhanced interface that allows real-time trace data to be routed out of the processor and stored in an external debug probe.

**Unsupported Features**

The Nios II/s core does not handle the execution of instructions with undefined opcodes. If the processor issues an instruction word with an undefined opcode, the resulting behavior is undefined.

**Nios II/e Core**

The Nios II/e “economy” core is designed to achieve the smallest possible core size. Altera designed the Nios II/e core with a singular design goal: Reduce resource utilization any way possible, while still maintaining compatibility with the Nios II instruction set architecture.
Hardware resources are conserved at the expense of execution performance. The Nios II/e core is roughly half the size of the Nios II/s core, but the execution performance is substantially lower.

The resulting core is optimal for cost-sensitive applications, as well as applications that require simple control logic.

Overview

The Nios II/e core:

- Executes at most one instruction per six clock cycles
- Can access up to 2 Gbytes of external address space
- Supports the addition of custom instructions
- Supports the JTAG debug module
- Does not provide hardware support for potential unimplemented instructions
- Has no instruction cache or data cache
- Does not perform branch prediction

The following sections discuss the noteworthy details of the Nios II/e core implementation. This document does not discuss low-level design issues, or implementation details that do not affect Nios II hardware or software designers.

Register File

At system generation time, the cpuid control register (clt5) is assigned a value that is guaranteed to be unique for each processor in the system.

Arithmetic Logic Unit

The Nios II/e core does not provide hardware support for any of the potential unimplemented instructions. All unimplemented instructions are emulated in software.

The Nios II/e core employs dedicated shift circuitry to perform shift and rotate operations. The dedicated shift circuitry achieves one-bit-per-cycle shift and rotate operations.

Memory Access

The Nios II/e core does not provide instruction cache or data cache. All memory and peripheral accesses generate an Avalon transfer. The Nios II/e core can address up to 2 Gbytes of external memory. The core
does not support bit-31 data cache bypass. However, the most-significant
bit of addresses is ignored to maintain consistency with Nios II core
implementations that do support bit-31 cache bypass method.

Instruction Execution Stages

This section provides an overview of the pipeline behavior as a means of
estimating assembly execution time. Most application programmers
never need to analyze the performance of individual instructions.

Instruction Performance

The Nios II/e core dispatches a single instruction at a time, and the
processor waits for an instruction to complete before fetching and
dispatching the next instruction. Because each instruction completes
before the next instruction is dispatched, branch prediction is not
necessary. This greatly simplifies the consideration of processor stalls.
Maximum performance is one instruction per six clock cycles. To achieve
six cycles, the Avalon instruction master port must fetch an instruction in
one clock cycle. A stall on the Avalon instruction master port directly
extends the execution time of the instruction.

Execution performance for all instructions is shown in Table 5–9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Cycles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal ALU instructions (e.g., add, cmpl)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch, jmp, ret, call, callr</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trap, break, eret, bret, flushp, wrctl, rdctl, unimplemented</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load word</td>
<td>6 + Duration of Avalon read transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load halfword</td>
<td>9 + Duration of Avalon read transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>load byte</td>
<td>10 + Duration of Avalon read transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>store</td>
<td>6 + Duration of Avalon write transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shift, rotate</td>
<td>7 to 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other instructions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combinatorial custom instructions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-cycle custom instructions</td>
<td>≥6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Exception Handling

The Nios II/e core supports the following exception types:

- Hardware interrupt
- Software traps
- Unimplemented instruction

### JTAG Debug Module

The Nios II/e core supports the JTAG debug module to provide a JTAG interface to software debugging tools. The JTAG debug module on the Nios II/e core does not support hardware breakpoints or trace.

### Unsupported Features

The Nios II/e core does not handle the execution of instructions with undefined opcodes. If the processor issues an instruction word with an undefined opcode, the resulting behavior is undefined.

### Document Revision History

Table 5–10 shows the revision history for this document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>Add preliminary Stratix III device family support</td>
<td>Stratix III device family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2006, v6.0.0</td>
<td>Performance for flushi and initi instructions changes from 1 to 4 cycles for Nios II/s and Nios II/f cores.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2005, v5.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2005, v5.0.0</td>
<td>Updates to Nios II/f and Nios II/s cores. Added tightly coupled memory and new data cache options. Corrected cycle counts for shift/rotate operations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2004, v1.1</td>
<td>Updates for Nios II 1.01 release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2004, v1.0</td>
<td>First publication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

Each release of the Nios® II Embedded Design Suite (EDS) introduces improvements to the Nios II processor, the software development tools, or both. This document catalogs the history of revisions to the Nios II processor; it does not track revisions to development tools, such as the Nios II IDE.

Improvements to the Nios II processor may affect:

- **Features of the Nios II architecture** – An example of an architecture revision is adding instructions to support floating-point arithmetic.

- **Implementation of a specific Nios II core** – An example of a core revision is increasing the maximum possible size of the data cache memory for the Nios II/f core.

- **Features of the JTAG debug module** – An example of a JTAG debug module revision is adding an additional trigger input to the JTAG debug module, allowing it to halt processor execution on a new type of trigger event.

Altera implements Nios II revisions such that code written for an existing Nios II core also works on future revisions of the same core.

Nios II Versions

The number for any version of the Nios II processor is determined by the version of the Nios II EDS. For example, in the Nios II EDS version 6.0, all Nios II cores are also version 6.0.
Table 6–1 lists the version numbers of all releases of the Nios II processor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>November 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>May 2006</td>
<td>The name Nios II Development Kit describing the software development tools changed to Nios II Embedded Design Suite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 SP1</td>
<td>January 2006</td>
<td>Bug fix for Nios II/f core.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>October 2005</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 5.0     | May 2005     | - Changed version nomenclature. Altera® now aligns the Nios II processor version with Altera’s Quartus® II® software version.  
- Memory structure enhancements:  
  (1) Added tightly coupled memory.  
  (2) Made data cache line size configurable.  
  (3) Made cache optional in Nios II/f and Nios II/s cores.  
- Verified Cyclone™ II device support in hardware.  
- Support for HardCopy® devices. |
| 1.1     | December 2004| - Minor enhancements to the architecture: Added cpuid control register, and updated the break instruction.  
- Increased user control of multiply and shift hardware in the arithmetic logic unit (ALU) for Nios II/s & Nios II/f cores.  
- Minor bug fixes. |
| 1.01    | September 2004| - Verified Stratix™ II device support in hardware.  
- Minor bug fixes. |
| 1.0     | May 2004     | Initial release of the Nios processor. |

Architecture Revisions

Architecture revisions augment the fundamental capabilities of the Nios II architecture, and affect all Nios II cores. A change in the architecture mandates a revision to all Nios II cores to accommodate the new architectural enhancement. For example, when Altera adds a new
instruction to the instruction set, Altera consequently must update all Nios II cores to recognize the new instruction. Table 6–2 lists revisions to the Nios II architecture.

### Table 6–2. Nios II Architecture Revisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>November 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>May 2006</td>
<td>Added optional cpu_resetrequest and and cpu_resettaken signals to all processor cores.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>October 2005</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>May 2005</td>
<td>Added the flushda instruction.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 1.1     | December 2004 | ● Added cpuid control register.  
|         |              | ● Updated break instruction specification to accept an immediate argument for use by debugging tools. |
| 1.01    | September 2004 | No changes. |
| 1.0     | May 2004 | Initial release of the Nios II processor architecture. |

### Core Revisions

Core revisions introduce changes to an existing Nios II core. Core revisions most commonly fix identified bugs, or add support for an architecture revision. Not every Nios II core is revised with every release of the Nios II architecture.

### Nios II/f Core

Table 6–3 lists revisions to the Nios II/f core.

### Table 6–3. Nios II/f Core Revisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>November 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>May 2006</td>
<td>Cycle count for flushi and initi instructions changes from 1 to 4 cycles. (SPR 201456)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 5.1 SP1 | January 2006 | Bug Fix:  
|         |              | Back-to-back store instructions can cause memory corruption to the stored data. If the first store is not to the last word of a cache line and the second store is to the last word of the line, memory corruption occurs. (SPR 201895) |
| 5.1     | October 2005 | No changes. |
### Table 6–3. Nios II/f Core Revisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 5.0     | May 2005     | - Added optional tightly coupled memory ports. Designers can add zero to four tightly coupled instruction master ports, and zero to four tightly coupled data master ports.  
- Made the data cache line size configurable. Designers can configure the data cache with the following line sizes: 4, 16, or 32 bytes. Previously, the data cache line size was fixed at 4 bytes.  
- Made instruction and data caches optional (previously, cache memories were always present). If the instruction cache is not present, the Nios II core does not have an instruction master port, and must use a tightly coupled instruction memory.  
- Verified Cyclone II device support in hardware.  
- Full support for HardCopy devices (previous versions required a work around to support HardCopy devices). |
| 1.1     | December 2004| - Added user-configurable options affecting multiply and shift operations. Now designers can choose one of three options:  
(1) Use embedded multiplier resources available in the target device family (previously available).  
(2) Use logic elements to implement multiply and shift hardware (new option).  
(3) Omit multiply hardware. Shift operations take one cycle per bit shifted; multiply operations are emulated in software (new option).  
- Added `cpuid` control register.  
- Bug Fix:  
  Interrupts that were disabled by `wrctl ienable` remained enabled for one clock cycle following the `wrctl` instruction. Now the instruction following such a `wrctl` cannot be interrupted. (SPR 164828) |
| 1.01    | September 2004| - Verified Stratix II device support in hardware.  
- Bug Fixes:  
  (1) When a store to memory is followed immediately in the pipeline by a load from the same memory location, and the memory location is held in d-cache, the load may return invalid data. This situation can occur in C code compiled with optimization off (-O0). (SPR 158904)  
  (2) The SOPC Builder top-level system module included an extra, unnecessary output port for systems with very small address spaces. (SPR 155871) |
| 1.0     | May 2004     | Initial release of the Nios II/f core. |
# Nios II/s Core

Table 6–4 lists revisions to the Nios II/s core.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>November 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>May 2006</td>
<td>Cycle count for flushi and initi instructions changes from 1 to 4 cycles. (SPR 201456)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>October 2005</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 5.0     | May 2005     | Added optional tightly coupled memory ports. Designers can add zero to four tightly coupled instruction master ports.  
Made instruction cache optional (previously instruction cache was always present). If the instruction cache is not present, the Nios II core does not have an instruction master port, and must use a tightly coupled instruction memory.  
Verified Cyclone II device support in hardware.  
Full support for HardCopy devices (previous versions required a work around to support HardCopy devices). |
| 1.1     | December 2004| Added user-configurable options affecting multiply and shift operations.  
Now designers can choose one of three options:  
(1) Use embedded multiplier resources available in the target device family (previously available).  
(2) Use logic elements to implement multiply and shift hardware (new option).  
(3) Omit multiply hardware. Shift operations take one cycle per bit shifted; multiply operations are emulated in software (new option).  
Added user-configurable option to include divide hardware in the ALU. Previously this option was available for only the Nios II/f core.  
Added cpuid control register. |
| 1.01    | September 2004| Verified Stratix II device support in hardware.  
Bug Fix:  
The SOPC Builder top-level system module included an extra, unnecessary output port for systems with very small address spaces. (SPR 155871) |
| 1.0     | May 2004     | Initial release of the Nios II/s core. |
JTAG Debug Module Revisions

Nios II/e Core

Table 6–5 lists revisions to the Nios II/e core.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>November 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>May 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>October 2005</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 5.0     | May 2005     | ● Verified Cyclone II device support in hardware.  
             ● Full support for HardCopy devices (previous versions required a work around to support HardCopy devices). |
| 1.1     | December 2004 | Added cpuid control register. |
| 1.01    | September 2004 | ● Verified Stratix II device support in hardware.  
            ● Bug Fix:  
            The SOPC Builder top-level system module included an extra, unnecessary output port for systems with very small address spaces. (SPR 155871) |
| 1.0     | May 2004     | Initial release of the Nios II/e core. |

JTAG debug module revisions augment the debug capabilities of the Nios II processor, or fix bugs isolated within the JTAG debug module logic.
Table 6–6 lists revisions to the JTAG debug module.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Version</th>
<th>Release Date</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>November 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>May 2006</td>
<td>No changes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>October 2005</td>
<td>Full support for HardCopy devices (previous versions of the JTAG debug module did not support HardCopy devices).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>May 2005</td>
<td>Full support for HardCopy devices (previous versions of the JTAG debug module did not support HardCopy devices).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>December 2004</td>
<td>Bug fix: When using the Nios II/s and Nios II/f cores, hardware breakpoints may have falsely triggered when placed on the instruction sequentially following a <code>jmp</code>, <code>trap</code>, or any branch instruction. (SPR 158805)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 1.01    | September 2004   | Feature enhancements:  
(1) Added the ability to trigger based on the instruction address. Uses include triggering trace control (trace on/off), sequential triggers (see below), and trigger in/out signal generation.  
(2) Enhanced trace collection such that collection can be stopped when the trace buffer is full without halting the Nios II processor.  
(3) Armed triggers – Enhanced trigger logic to support two levels of triggers, or "armed triggers"; enabling the use of "Event A then event B" trigger definitions.  
Bug fixes:  
(1) On the Nios II/s core, trace data sometimes recorded incorrect addresses during interrupt processing. (SPR 158033)  
(2) Under certain circumstances, captured trace data appeared to start earlier or later than the desired trigger location. (SPR 154467)  
(3) During debug, the processor would hang if a hardware breakpoint and an interrupt occurred simultaneously. (SPR 154097) |
| 1.0     | May 2004         | Initial release of the JTAG debug module.                            |
Table 6–7 shows the revision history for this document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2006, v6.0.0</td>
<td>Updates for Nios II cores version 6.0.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2005, v5.1.0</td>
<td>Updates for Nios II cores version 5.1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2005, v5.0.0</td>
<td>Updates for Nios II cores version 5.0.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 2004, v1.1</td>
<td>Updates for Nios II cores version 1.1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2004, v1.0</td>
<td>First publication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This section describes the Application Binary Interface (ABI) for the Nios® II processor. The ABI describes:

- How data is arranged in memory
- Behavior and structure of the stack
- Function calling conventions

### Data Types

Table 7–1 shows the size and representation of the C/C++ data types for the Nios II processor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Size (Bytes)</th>
<th>Representation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>char, signed char</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2s complement (ASCII)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned char</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>binary (ASCII)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short, signed short</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2s complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned short</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int, signed int</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2s complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned int</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long, signed long</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2s complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>IEEE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>IEEE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pointer</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long long</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2s complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unsigned long long</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>binary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Memory Alignment

Contents in memory are aligned as follows:

- A function must be aligned to a minimum of 32-bit boundary.
- The minimum alignment of a data element is its natural size. A data element larger than 32-bits need only be aligned to a 32-bit boundary.
Register Usage

- Structures, unions, and strings must be aligned to a minimum of 32 bits.
- Bit-fields inside structures are always 32-bit aligned.

The ABI adds additional usage conventions to the Nios II register file defined in the Programming Model chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook. The ABI uses the registers as shown in Table 7–2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Used by Compiler</th>
<th>Callee Saved (1)</th>
<th>Normal Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r0</td>
<td>zero</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>0x00000000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r1</td>
<td>at</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assembler Temporary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r2</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Return Value (Least-significant 32 bits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r3</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Return Value (Most-significant 32 bits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r4</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Register Arguments (First 32 bits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r5</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Register Arguments (Second 32 bits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r6</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Register Arguments (Third 32 bits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r7</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Register Arguments (Fourth 32 bits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r8</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Caller-Saved General-Purpose Registers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r10</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r16</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Callee-Saved General-Purpose Registers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r17</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r18</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r19</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r20</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r21</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r22</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r23</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r24</td>
<td>et</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Exception Temporary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The endianess of values greater than 8-bits is little endian. The upper 8 bits of a value are stored at the higher byte address.

**Stacks**

The stack grows downward (i.e. towards lower addresses). The Stack Pointer points to the last used slot. The frame grows upwards, which means that the Frame Pointer points to the bottom of the frame.

*Figure 7–1* shows an example of the structure of a current frame. In this case, function *a*() calls function *b*() , and the stack is shown before the call and after the prolog in the called function has completed.

### Table 7–2. Nios II ABI Register Usage (Part 2 of 2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Register</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Used by Compiler</th>
<th>Callee Saved</th>
<th>Normal Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>r25</td>
<td>bt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Break Temporary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r26</td>
<td>gp</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global Pointer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r27</td>
<td>sp</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stack Pointer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r28</td>
<td>fp</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>Frame Pointer (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r29</td>
<td>ea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Exception Return Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r30</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Break Return Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r31</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>Return Address</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Notes to Table 7–2:*

(1) A function may use one of these registers if it saves it first. The function must restore the register’s original value before exiting.

(2) If the frame pointer is not used, the register is available as a temporary. See “Frame Pointer Elimination” on page 7–4.
Each section of the current frame is aligned to a 32-bit boundary. The ABI requires the stack pointer be 32-bit aligned at all times.

**Frame Pointer Elimination**

Because, in the normal case, the frame pointer is the same as the stack pointer, the information in the frame pointer is redundant. Therefore, to achieve most optimal code, eliminating the frame pointer is desirable. However, when the frame pointer is eliminated, because debuggers have issues locating the stack properly, debugging without a frame pointer is difficult to do. When the frame pointer is eliminated, register \( fp \) becomes available as a temporary.

**Call Saved Registers**

Implementation note: the compiler is responsible for saving registers that need to be saved in a function. If there are any such registers, they are saved on the stack in this order from high addresses: \( ra, fp, r2, r3, r4, r5, r6, r7, r8, r9, r10, r11, r12, r13, r14, r15, r16, r17, r18, r19, r20, r21, r22, r23, r24, r25, gp, \) and \( sp \). Stack space is not allocated for registers that are not saved.
Further Examples of Stacks

There are a number of special cases for stack layout, which are described in this section.

Stack Frame for a Function With alloca()

Figure 7–2 depicts what the frame looks like after `alloca()` is called. The space allocated by `alloca()` replaces the outgoing arguments and the outgoing arguments get new space allocated at the bottom of the frame.

Implementation note: the Nios II C/C++ compiler maintains a frame pointer for any function that calls `alloca()`, even if `–fomit-frame-pointer` is specified.

Stack Frame for a Function with Variable Arguments

Functions that take variable arguments still have their first 16-bytes of arguments arriving in registers `r4` through `r7`, just like other functions.

Implementation note: In order for varargs to work, functions that take variable arguments will allocate 16 extra bytes of storage on the stack. They will copy to the stack the first 16-bytes of their arguments from registers `r4` through `r7` as shown in Figure 7–3.
Functions that take struct value arguments still have their first 16-bytes of arguments arriving in registers $r4$ through $r7$, just like other functions.

Implementation note: if part of a structure is passed via registers, the function may need to copy the register contents back to the stack. This is similar to the variable arguments case as shown in Figure 7–3.

Function Prologs

The Nios II C/C++ compiler generates function prologs that allocate the stack frame of a function for storage of stack temporaries and outgoing arguments. In addition, each prolog is responsible for saving any state of its calling function for variables marked callee-saved by the ABI. The callee-saved register are listed in Table 7–2 on page 7–2. A function prolog is required to save a callee saved register only if the function will be using the register.
Debuggers can use the knowledge of how the function prologs work to disassemble the instructions to reconstruct state when doing a back trace. Preferably, debuggers can use information stored in the DWARF2 debugging information to find out what a prolog has done.

The instructions found in a Nios II function prolog perform the following tasks:

- Adjust the SP (to allocate the frame)
- Store registers to the frame.
- Assign the SP to the FP

Example 7–1 shows an example of a function prolog.

```c
/* Adjust the stack pointer */
addisp, sp, -120/* make a 120 byte frame */

/* Store registers to the frame */
stw ra, 116(sp)/* store the return address */
stw fp, 112(sp)/* store the frame pointer*/
stw r16, 108(sp)/* store callee-saved register */
stw r17, 104(sp) /* store callee-saved register */

/* Set the new frame pointer */
mov fp, sp
```

**Prolog Variations**

The following variations can occur in a prolog:

- If the function’s frame size is greater than 32,767 bytes, extra temporary registers will be used in the calculation of the new SP as well as for the offsets of where to store callee-saved registers. This is due to the maximum size of immediate values allowed by the Nios II processor.
- If the frame pointer is not in use, the move of the SP to FP will not happen.
- If variable arguments are used, there will be extra instructions to store the argument registers to the stack.
- If the function is a leaf function, the return address will not be saved.
- If optimizations are on, especially instruction scheduling, the order of the instructions may change and may become interlaced with instructions located after the prolog.
Arguments & Return Values

This section discusses the details of passing arguments to functions and returning values from functions.

Arguments

The first 16-bytes to a function are passed in registers r4 through r7. The arguments are passed as if a structure containing the types of the arguments was constructed, and the first 16-bytes of the structure are located in r4 through r7.

A simple example:

```c
int function (int a, int b);
```

The equivalent structure representing the arguments is:

```c
struct { int a; int b; };
```

The first 16-bytes of the struct are assigned to r4 through r7. Therefore, r4 is assigned the value of a and r5 the value of b.

The first 16-bytes to a function taking variable arguments are passed the same way as a function not taking variable arguments. The called function must clean-up the stack as necessary to support the variable arguments. See “Stack Frame for a Function with Variable Arguments” on page 7–5.

Return Values

Return values of types up to 8-bytes are returned in r2 and r3. For return values greater than 8-bytes, the caller must allocate memory for the result and must pass the address of the result memory as a hidden zero argument.

The hidden zero argument is best explained through an example.
Example 7–2. Example: function \texttt{a()} calls function \texttt{b()}, which returns a struct.

/* \texttt{b()} computes a structure-type result and returns it */

\begin{verbatim}
STRUCT b(int i, int j)
{
    ...
    return result;
}

void a(...)
{
    ...
    value = b(i, j);
}
\end{verbatim}

In this example, as long as the result type is no larger than 8 bytes, \texttt{b()} will return its result in \texttt{r2} and \texttt{r3}.

If the return type is larger than 8 bytes, the Nios II C/C++ compiler treats this program as if \texttt{a()} had passed a pointer to \texttt{b()}. The example below shows how the Nios II C/C++ compiler sees the code above.

Example 7–3. \texttt{void b(STRUCT *p_result, int i, int j)}

\begin{verbatim}
{
    ...
    *p_result = result;
}

void a(...)
{
    STRUCT value;
    ...
    b(*value, i, j);
}
\end{verbatim}
Table 7–3 shows the revision history for this document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2006, v6.0.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2005, v5.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2005, v5.0.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2004, v1.0</td>
<td>First publication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. Instruction Set Reference

Introduction

This section introduces the Nios® II instruction-word format and provides a detailed reference of the Nios II instruction set.

Word Formats

There are three types of Nios II instruction word format: I-type, R-type, and J-type.

I-Type

The defining characteristic of the I-type instruction-word format is that it contains an immediate value embedded within the instruction word. I-type instructions words contain:

- A 6-bit opcode field OP
- Two 5-bit register fields A and B
- A 16 bit immediate data field IMM16

In most cases, fields A and IMM16 specify the source operands, and field B specifies the destination register. IMM16 is considered signed except for logical operations and unsigned comparisons.

I-type instructions include arithmetic and logical operations such as addi and andi; branch operations; load and store operations; and cache-management operations.

The I-type instruction format is:

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | OP |
The defining characteristic of the R-type instruction-word format is that all arguments and results are specified as registers. R-type instructions contain:

- A 6-bit opcode field OP
- Three 5-bit register fields A, B, and C
- An 11-bit opcode-extension field OPX

In most cases, fields A and B specify the source operands, and field C specifies the destination register. Some R-Type instructions embed a small immediate value in the low-order bits of OPX.

R-type instructions include arithmetic and logical operations such as `add` and `nor`; comparison operations such as `cmpeq` and `cmplt`; the `custom` instruction; and other operations that need only register operands.

The R-type instruction format is:

```
| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | OPX| OP |
```
J-Type

J-type instructions contain:

- A 6-bit opcode field
- A 26-bit immediate data field

The only J-type instruction is \texttt{call}.

The J-type instruction format is:

\begin{verbatim}
   31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
   IMMED26   OP
\end{verbatim}
Instruction Opcodes

The OP field in the Nios II instruction word specifies the major class of an opcode as shown in Table 8–1 and Table 8–2. Most values of OP are encodings for I-type instructions. One encoding, OP = 0x00, is the J-type instruction `call`. Another encoding, OP = 0x3a, is used for all R-type instructions, in which case, the OPX field differentiates the instructions. All unused encodings of OP and OPX are reserved.

### Table 8–1. OP Encodings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OP</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>OP</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>OP</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>OP</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x00</td>
<td>call</td>
<td>0x10</td>
<td>cmplti</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td>cmpeqi</td>
<td>0x30</td>
<td>cmpltui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x01</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x11</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x21</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x02</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x12</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x22</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x32</td>
<td>custom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>ldbu</td>
<td>0x13</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x23</td>
<td>ldbuio</td>
<td>0x33</td>
<td>initd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>addi</td>
<td>0x14</td>
<td>ori</td>
<td>0x24</td>
<td>muli</td>
<td>0x34</td>
<td>orhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>stb</td>
<td>0x15</td>
<td>stw</td>
<td>0x25</td>
<td>stbio</td>
<td>0x35</td>
<td>stwio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>br</td>
<td>0x16</td>
<td>blt</td>
<td>0x26</td>
<td>beq</td>
<td>0x36</td>
<td>bltu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x07</td>
<td>ldb</td>
<td>0x17</td>
<td>ldw</td>
<td>0x27</td>
<td>ldbio</td>
<td>0x37</td>
<td>ldwio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>cmpgei</td>
<td>0x18</td>
<td>cmpnei</td>
<td>0x28</td>
<td>cmpgeui</td>
<td>0x38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x09</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x19</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x29</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x39</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0A</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x1A</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x2A</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x3A</td>
<td>R-Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0B</td>
<td>ldhu</td>
<td>0x1B</td>
<td>flushda</td>
<td>0x2B</td>
<td>ldhuio</td>
<td>0x3B</td>
<td>flushd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0C</td>
<td>andi</td>
<td>0x1C</td>
<td>xori</td>
<td>0x2C</td>
<td>andhi</td>
<td>0x3C</td>
<td>xorhi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0D</td>
<td>sth</td>
<td>0x1D</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x2D</td>
<td>sthio</td>
<td>0x3D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0E</td>
<td>bge</td>
<td>0x1E</td>
<td>bne</td>
<td>0x2E</td>
<td>bgeu</td>
<td>0x3E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0F</td>
<td>ldh</td>
<td>0x1F</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x2F</td>
<td>ldhio</td>
<td>0x3F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 8–2. OPX Encodings for R-Type Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OPX</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>OPX</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>OPX</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>OPX</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x00</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x10</td>
<td>cmplt</td>
<td>0x20</td>
<td>cmpeq</td>
<td>0x30</td>
<td>cmpltu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>eret</td>
<td>0x11</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x21</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x31</td>
<td>add</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x02</td>
<td>roli</td>
<td>0x12</td>
<td>slli</td>
<td>0x22</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x32</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x03</td>
<td>rol</td>
<td>0x13</td>
<td>sll</td>
<td>0x23</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x04</td>
<td>flushp</td>
<td>0x14</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x24</td>
<td>divu</td>
<td>0x34</td>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>ret</td>
<td>0x15</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x25</td>
<td>div</td>
<td>0x35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x06</td>
<td>nor</td>
<td>0x16</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>0x26</td>
<td>rdctl</td>
<td>0x36</td>
<td>sync</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x07</td>
<td>mulxuu</td>
<td>0x17</td>
<td>mulxsu</td>
<td>0x27</td>
<td>mul</td>
<td>0x37</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x08</td>
<td>cmpge</td>
<td>0x18</td>
<td>cmpne</td>
<td>0x28</td>
<td>cmpgeu</td>
<td>0x38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x09</td>
<td>bret</td>
<td>0x19</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x29</td>
<td>initi</td>
<td>0x39</td>
<td>sub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0A</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x1A</td>
<td>srl</td>
<td>0x2A</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x3A</td>
<td>sra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0B</td>
<td>ror</td>
<td>0x1B</td>
<td>srl</td>
<td>0x2B</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x3B</td>
<td>sra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0C</td>
<td>flushi</td>
<td>0x1C</td>
<td>nextpc</td>
<td>0x2C</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x3C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0D</td>
<td>jmp</td>
<td>0x1D</td>
<td>callr</td>
<td>0x2D</td>
<td>trap</td>
<td>0x3D</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0E</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>0x1E</td>
<td>xor</td>
<td>0x2E</td>
<td>wrctl</td>
<td>0x3E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0x0F</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x1F</td>
<td>mulxss</td>
<td>0x2F</td>
<td></td>
<td>0x3F</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Assembler Pseudo-instructions

Table 8–3 lists pseudoinstructions available in Nios II assembly language. Pseudoinstructions are used in assembly source code like regular assembly instructions. Each pseudoinstruction is implemented at the machine level using an equivalent instruction. The movia pseudoinstruction is the only exception, being implemented with two instructions. Most pseudoinstructions do not appear in disassembly views of machine code.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pseudoinstruction</th>
<th>Equivalent Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bgt rA, rB, label</td>
<td>blt rB, rA, label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bgtu rA, rB, label</td>
<td>bltu rB, rA, label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ble rA, rB, label</td>
<td>bge rB, rA, label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleu rA, rB, label</td>
<td>bgeu rB, rA, label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgt rC, rA, rB</td>
<td>cmplt rC, rB, rA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgti rB, rA, IMMED</td>
<td>cmpgei rB, rA, (IMMED+1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgtu rC, rA, rB</td>
<td>cmpltu rC, rB, rA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpgtui rB, rA, IMMED</td>
<td>cmpgeui rB, rA, (IMMED+1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmple rC, rA, rB</td>
<td>cmpge rC, rB, rA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmplei rB, rA, IMMED</td>
<td>cmplti rB, rA, (IMMED+1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpleu rC, rA, rB</td>
<td>cmpgeu rC, rB, rA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cmpleui rB, rA, IMMED</td>
<td>cmpltui rB, rA, (IMMED+1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mov rC, rA</td>
<td>add rC, rA, r0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movhi rB, IMMED</td>
<td>orhi rB, r0, IMMED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movi rB, IMMED</td>
<td>addi, rB, r0, IMMED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movia rB, label</td>
<td>orhi rB, r0, %hiadj(label)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>addi, rB, r0, %lo(label)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>movui rB, IMMED</td>
<td>ori rB, r0, IMMED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nop</td>
<td>add r0, r0, r0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subi, rB, rA, IMMED</td>
<td>addi rB, rA, IMMED</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Assembler Macros

The Nios II assembler provides macros to extract halfwords from labels and from 32-bit immediate values. Table 8–4 lists the available macros. These macros return 16-bit signed values or 16-bit unsigned values depending on where they are used. When used with an instruction that requires a 16-bit signed immediate value, these macros return a value ranging from –32768 to 32767. When used with an instruction that requires a 16-bit unsigned immediate value, these macros return a value ranging from 0 to 65535.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Macro</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%lo(imm32)</td>
<td>Extract bits [15..0] of imm32</td>
<td>imm32 &amp; 0xffff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%hi(imm32)</td>
<td>Extract bits [31..16] of imm32</td>
<td>(imm32 &gt;&gt; 16) &amp; 0xffff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%hiadj(imm32)</td>
<td>Extract bits [31..16] and adds bit 15 of imm32</td>
<td>((imm32 &gt;&gt; 16) &amp; 0xffff) + ((imm32 &gt;&gt; 15) &amp; 0x1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%gprel(imm32)</td>
<td>Replace the imm32 address with an offset from the global pointer(1)</td>
<td>imm32 – __gp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes to Table 8–4:
(1) See the Application Binary Interface chapter of the Nios II Processor Reference Handbook for more information about global pointers.
The following pages list all Nios II instruction mnemonics in alphabetical order. Table 8–5 shows the notation conventions used to describe instruction operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X ← Y</td>
<td>X is written with Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC ← X</td>
<td>The program counter (PC) is written with address X; the instruction at X will be the next instruction to execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>The address of the assembly instruction in question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rA, rB, rC</td>
<td>One of the 32-bit general-purpose registers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMMn</td>
<td>An n-bit immediate value, embedded in the instruction word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMMED</td>
<td>An immediate value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xn</td>
<td>The rth bit of X, where n = 0 is the LSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xn..m</td>
<td>Consecutive bits n through m of X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0xNNMM</td>
<td>Hexadecimal notation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| X : Y   | Bitwise concatenation  
For example, (0x12 : 0x34) = 0x1234 |
| σ(X)    | The value of X after being sign-extended into a full register-sized signed integer |
| X >> n  | The value X after being right-shifted n bit positions |
| X << n  | The value X after being left-shifted n bit positions |
| X & Y   | Bitwise logical AND |
| X | Y | Bitwise logical OR |
| X ^ Y | Bitwise logical XOR |
| ~X      | Bitwise logical NOT (one’s complement) |
| Mem8[X] | The byte located in data memory at byte-address X |
| Mem16[X] | The halfword located in data memory at byte-address X |
| Mem32[X] | The word located in data memory at byte-address X |
| label   | An address label specified in the assembly file |
| (signed) rX | The value of rX treated as a signed number |
| (unsigned) rX | The value of rX, treated as an unsigned number |
add

Operation: \( rC \leftarrow rA + rB \)

Assembler Syntax: \( \text{add rC, rA, rB} \)

Example: \( \text{add r6, r7, r8} \)

Description: Calculates the sum of \( rA \) and \( rB \). Stores the result in \( rC \). Used for both signed and unsigned addition.

Usage:

**Carry Detection (unsigned operands):**

Following an \( \text{add} \) operation, a carry out of the MSB can be detected by checking whether the unsigned sum is less than one of the unsigned operands. The carry bit can be written to a register, or a conditional branch can be taken based on the carry condition. Both cases are shown below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{add rC, rA, rB} & \quad ; \text{The original add operation} \\
\text{cmpltu rD, rC, rA} & \quad ; \text{rD is written with the carry bit} \\
\text{add rC, rA, rB} & \quad ; \text{The original add operation} \\
\text{bltu rC, rA, label} & \quad ; \text{Branch if carry was generated}
\end{align*}
\]

**Overflow Detection (signed operands):**

An overflow is detected when two positives are added and the sum is negative, or when two negatives are added and the sum is positive. The overflow condition can control a conditional branch, as shown below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{add rC, rA, rB} & \quad ; \text{The original add operation} \\
\text{xor rD, rC, rA} & \quad ; \text{Compare signs of sum and } rA \\
\text{xor rE, rC, rB} & \quad ; \text{Compare signs of sum and } rB \\
\text{and rD, rD, rE} & \quad ; \text{Combine comparisons} \\
\text{blt rD, r0, label} & \quad ; \text{Branch if overflow occurred}
\end{align*}
\]

Instruction Type: R

Instruction Fields:

- \( A = \) Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B = \) Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( C = \) Register index of operand \( rC \)

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x31</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
addi

add immediate

**Operation:**

\[ \text{rB} \leftarrow \text{rA} + \sigma (\text{IMM16}) \]

**Assembler Syntax:**

`addi rB, rA, IMM16`

**Example:**

`addi r6, r7, -100`

**Description:**

Sign-extends the 16-bit immediate value and adds it to the value of rA. Stores the sum in rB.

**Usage:**

**Carry Detection (unsigned operands):**

Following an `addi` operation, a carry out of the MSB can be detected by checking whether the unsigned sum is less than one of the unsigned operands. The carry bit can be written to a register, or a conditional branch can be taken based on the carry condition. Both cases are shown below.

```
addi rB, rA, IMM16 ; The original add operation
cmpltu rD, rB, rA ; rD is written with the carry bit
```

```
addi rB, rA, IMM16 ; The original add operation
bltu rB, rA, label ; Branch if carry was generated
```

**Overflow Detection (signed operands):**

An overflow is detected when two positives are added and the sum is negative, or when two negatives are added and the sum is positive. The overflow condition can control a conditional branch, as shown below.

```
addi rB, rA, IMM16 ; The original add operation
xor rC, rB, rA ; Compare signs of sum and rA
xorhi rD, rB, IMM16 ; Compare signs of sum and IMM16
and rC, rC, rD ; Combine comparisons
blt rC, r0, label ; Branch if overflow occurred
```

**Instruction Type:**

\( I \)

**Instruction Fields:**

- \( A = \) Register index of operand rA
- \( B = \) Register index of operand rB
- \( \text{IMM16} = 16\text{-bit signed immediate value} \)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x04 |

8–10
Nios II Processor Reference Handbook

Altera Corporation
November 2006
**Operation:**  
rC ← rA & rB  

**Assembler Syntax:**  
and rC, rA, rB  

**Example:**  
and r6, r7, r8  

**Description:**  
Calculates the bitwise logical AND of rA and rB and stores the result in rC.  

**Instruction Type:**  
R  

**Instruction Fields:**  
A = Register index of operand rA  
B = Register index of operand rB  
C = Register index of operand rC  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>0x0e</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0x3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
andhi

bitwise logical and immediate into high halfword

Operation: \[ rB \leftarrow rA \& (\text{IMM16} : 0x0000) \]
Assembler Syntax: `andhi rB, rA, IMM16`
Example: `andhi r6, r7, 100`
Description: Calculates the bitwise logical AND of \( rA \) and (\( \text{IMM16} : 0x0000 \)) and stores the result in \( rB \).

Instruction Type: I
Instruction Fields: A = Register index of operand \( rA \)  
B = Register index of operand \( rB \)  
IMM16 = 16-bit unsigned immediate value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>IMM16</th>
<th>0x2c</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**andi**

**bitwise logical and immediate**

**Operation:**

\[ r_B \leftarrow r_A \& (0x0000 : \text{IMM16}) \]

**Assembler Syntax:**

`andi r_B, r_A, \text{IMM16}`

**Example:**

`andi r_6, r_7, 100`

**Description:**

Calculates the bitwise logical AND of \( r_A \) and \((0x0000 : \text{IMM16})\) and stores the result in \( r_B \).

**Instruction Type:**

`I`

**Instruction Fields:**

- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( r_A \)
- \( B \) = Register index of operand \( r_B \)
- \( \text{IMM16} \) = 16-bit unsigned immediate value

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x0c |
### beq

**branch if equal**

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } (rA == rB) \\
\text{then } \text{PC} \leftarrow \text{PC} + 4 + \sigma(\text{IMM16}) \\
\text{else } \text{PC} \leftarrow \text{PC} + 4
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

\[
\text{beq } rA, rB, \text{ label}
\]

**Example:**

\[
\text{beq } r6, r7, \text{ label}
\]

**Description:**

If \( rA == rB \), then \textit{beq} transfers program control to the instruction at label. In the instruction encoding, the offset given by IMM16 is treated as a signed number of bytes relative to the instruction immediately following \textit{beq}. The two least-significant bits of IMM16 are always zero, because instruction addresses must be word-aligned.

**Instruction Type:**

\( I \)

**Instruction Fields:**

- \( A = \) Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B = \) Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( \text{IMM16} = 16\text{-bit signed immediate value} \)

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>0x26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*3 1 3 0 2 9 2 8 2 7 2 6 2 5 2 4 2 3 2 2 2 1 2 0 1 9 1 8 1 7 1 6 1 5 1 4 1 3 1 2 1 1 1 0 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0*
Operation: if ((signed) rA >= (signed) rB)
then PC ← PC + 4 + σ(IMM16)
else PC ← PC + 4

Assembler Syntax: bge rA, rB, label

Example: bge r6, r7, top_of_loop

Description: If (signed) rA >= (signed) rB, then bge transfers program control to the instruction at label. In the instruction encoding, the offset given by IMM16 is treated as a signed number of bytes relative to the instruction immediately following bge. The two least-significant bits of IMM16 are always zero, because instruction addresses must be word-aligned.

Instruction Type: I

Instruction Fields: A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x0e |
bgeu
branch if greater than or equal unsigned

Operation: if ((unsigned) rA >= (unsigned) rB)
then PC ← PC + 4 + σ(IMM16)
else PC ← PC + 4

Assembler Syntax: bgeu rA, rB, label

Example: bgeu r6, r7, top_of_loop

Description: If (unsigned) rA >= (unsigned) rB, then bgeu transfers program control to the instruction at label. In the instruction encoding, the offset given by IMM16 is treated as a signed number of bytes relative to the instruction immediately following bgeu. The two least-significant bits of IMM16 are always zero, because instruction addresses must be word-aligned.

Instruction Type: I

Instruction Fields:
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

| 31  | 30  | 29  | 28  | 27  | 26  | 25  | 24  | 23  | 22  | 21  | 20  | 19  | 18  | 17  | 16  | 15  | 14  | 13  | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| A   | B   | IMM16 | 0x2e |
branch if greater than signed

Operation:  
if ((signed) rA > (signed) rB)  
then PC ← label  
else PC ← PC + 4

Assembler Syntax:  
bgt rA, rB, label

Example:  
bgt r6, r7, top_of_loop

Description:  
If (signed) rA > (signed) rB, then bgt transfers program control to the instruction at label.

Pseudoinstruction:  
bgt is implemented with the blt instruction by swapping the register operands.
bgtu
branch if greater than unsigned

Operation: if ((unsigned) rA > (unsigned) rB) then PC ← label else PC ← PC + 4

Assembler Syntax: bgtu rA, rB, label

Example: bgtu r6, r7, top_of_loop

Description: If (unsigned) rA > (unsigned) rB, then bgtu transfers program control to the instruction at label.

Pseudoinstruction: bgtu is implemented with the bltu instruction by swapping the register operands.
ble
branch if less than or equal signed

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } ((\text{signed}) \ rA \leq (\text{signed}) \ rB) \\
\text{then PC} \leftarrow \text{label} \\
\text{else PC} \leftarrow \text{PC} + 4
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

\text{ble rA, rB, label}

**Example:**

\text{ble r6, r7, top_of_loop}

**Description:**

If (signed) \( rA \leq \text{(signed)} \ rB \), then \text{ble} transfers program control to the instruction at label.

**Pseudoinstruction:**

\text{ble} \ is implemented with the \text{bge} instruction by swapping the register operands.
bleu
branch if less than or equal to unsigned

Operation:
if ((unsigned) rA <= (unsigned) rB)
then PC ← label
else PC ← PC + 4

Assembler Syntax: bleu rA, rB, label

Example: bleu r6, r7, top_of_loop

Description: If (unsigned) rA <= (unsigned) rB, then bleu transfers program counter to the instruction at label.

Pseudoinstruction: bleu is implemented with the bgeu instruction by swapping the register operands.
**blt**

branch if less than signed

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } ((\text{signed}) \ rA < (\text{signed}) \ rB) \\
\text{then } PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \sigma (\text{IMM16}) \\
\text{else } PC \leftarrow PC + 4
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

\[
\text{blt} \ rA, \ rB, \ label
\]

**Example:**

\[
\text{blt} \ r6, \ r7, \ top\_of\_loop
\]

**Description:**

If \((\text{signed}) \ rA < (\text{signed}) \ rB\), then \texttt{blt} transfers program control to the instruction at label. In the instruction encoding, the offset given by IMM16 is treated as a signed number of bytes relative to the instruction immediately following \texttt{blt}. The two least-significant bits of IMM16 are always zero, because instruction addresses must be word-aligned.

**Instruction Type:** \ I \\

**Instruction Fields:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Register index of operand (rA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Register index of operand (rB)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>16-bit signed immediate value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>IMM16</th>
<th>0x16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0x16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
bltu
branch if less than unsigned

Operation:  
if ((unsigned) rA < (unsigned) rB) 
then PC ← PC + 4 + σ(IMM16) 
else PC ← PC + 4

Assembler Syntax:  bltu rA, rB, label

Example:  bltu r6, r7, top_of_loop

Description:  If (unsigned) rA < (unsigned) rB, then bltu transfers program control to the 
instruction at label. In the instruction encoding, the offset given by IMM16 is treated as 
a signed number of bytes relative to the instruction immediately following bltu. The 
two least-significant bits of IMM16 are always zero, because instruction addresses 
must be word-aligned.

Instruction Type:  I

Instruction Fields:  A = Register index of operand rA  
B = Register index of operand rB  
MM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A   | B  | IMM16 | 0x36 |
bne

branch if not equal

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } (rA \neq rB) \\
\text{then } PC \leftarrow PC + 4 + \sigma(I\text{MM}16) \\
\text{else } PC \leftarrow PC + 4
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

\[\text{bne } rA, rB, \text{ label}\]

**Example:**

\[\text{bne } r6, r7, \text{ top_of_loop}\]

**Description:**

If \(rA \neq rB\), then `bne` transfers program control to the instruction at `label`. In the instruction encoding, the offset given by `IMM16` is treated as a signed number of bytes relative to the instruction immediately following `bne`. The two least-significant bits of `IMM16` are always zero, because instruction addresses must be word-aligned.

**Instruction Type:**

\(I\)

**Instruction Fields:**

- \(A\) = Register index of operand \(rA\)
- \(B\) = Register index of operand \(rB\)
- \(IMM16\) = 16-bit signed immediate value
unconditional branch

Operation: \( \text{PC} \leftarrow \text{PC} + 4 + \sigma (\text{IMM16}) \)

Assembler Syntax: `br label`

Example: `br top_of_loop`

Description: Transfers program control to the instruction at label. In the instruction encoding, the offset given by IMM16 is treated as a signed number of bytes relative to the instruction immediately following `br`. The two least-significant bits of IMM16 are always zero, because instruction addresses must be word-aligned.

Instruction Type: `I`

Instruction Fields: \( \text{IMM16} = 16\text{-bit signed immediate value} \)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0  | 0  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 0x06 |
**Break**

Debugging breakpoint

**Operation:**
- `bstatus ← status`
- `PIE ← 0`
- `U ← 0`
- `ba ← PC + 4`
- `PC ← break handler address`

**Assembler Syntax:**
- `break`
- `break imm5`

**Example:**
- `break`

**Description:**
Breaks program execution and transfers control to the debugger break-processing routine. Saves the address of the next instruction in register `ba` and saves the contents of the `status` register in `bstatus`. Disables interrupts, then transfers execution to the break handler.

The 5-bit immediate field `imm5` is ignored by the processor, but it can be used by the debugger.

`break` with no argument is the same as `break 0`.

**Usage:**
`break` is used by debuggers exclusively. Only debuggers should place `break` in a user program, operating system, or exception handler. The address of the break handler is specified at system generation time.

Some debuggers support `break` and `break 0` instructions in source code. These debuggers treat the `break` instruction as a normal breakpoint.

**Instruction Type:**
- `R`

**Instruction Fields:**
- `IMM5 = Type of breakpoint`

```
|  31  |  30  |  29  |  28  |  27  |  26  |  25  |  24  |  23  |  22  |  21  |  20  |  19  |  18  |  17  |  16  |  15  |  14  |  13  |  12  |  11  |  10  |  9  |  8  |  7  |  6  |  5  |  4  |  3  |  2  |  1  |  0  |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 0    | 0    | 0x1e | 0x34 | IMM5 | 0x3a |
```
bret
breakpoint return

Operation: \[ \text{status} \leftarrow \text{bstatus} \]
\[ \text{PC} \leftarrow \text{ba} \]

Assembler Syntax: \texttt{bret}

Example: \texttt{bret}

Description: Copies the value of \texttt{bstatus} into the \texttt{status} register, then transfers execution to the address in \texttt{ba}.

Usage: \texttt{bret} is used by debuggers exclusively and should not appear in user programs, operating systems, or exception handlers.

Instruction Type: \texttt{R}

Instruction Fields: None

\begin{tabular}{cccccccc}
31 & 30 & 29 & 28 & 27 & 26 & 25 & 24  \\
0x1e & 0 & 0 & 0x09 & 0 & 0 & 0x3a & \\
\end{tabular}
call subroutine

Operation: $ra \leftarrow PC + 4$

$PC \leftarrow (PC_{31..28} : IMM26 \times 4)$

Assembler Syntax: call label

Example: call write_char

Description: Saves the address of the next instruction in register $ra$, and transfers execution to the instruction at address $PC_{31..28} : IMM26 \times 4$.

Usage: call can transfer execution anywhere within the 256 MB range determined by $PC_{31..28}$. The linker must handle cases in which the address is out of this range.

Instruction Type: J

Instruction Fields: IMM26 = 26-bit unsigned immediate value

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | IMM26 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 0 |
callr

call subroutine in register

Operation:

ra ← PC + 4
PC ← rA

Assembler Syntax: callr rA

Example: callr r6

Description: Saves the address of the next instruction in the return-address register, and transfers execution to the address contained in register rA.

Usage: callr is used to dereference C-language function pointers.

Instruction Type: R

Instruction Fields:

A = Register index of operand rA

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | 0  | 0x1f| 0x1d| 0  | 0x3a|
cmpeq
compare equal

Operation:
if (rA == rB)
then rC ← 1
else rC ← 0

Assembler Syntax:  cmpeq rC, rA, rB
Example:  cmpeq r6, r7, r8

Description:
If rA == rB, then stores 1 to rC; otherwise, stores 0 to rC.

Usage:
cmpeq performs the == operation of the C programming language. Also, cmpeq can be used to implement the C logical-negation operator “!”.  

\[ \text{cmpeq rC, rA, } r0 \]  

; Implements rC = !rA

Instruction Type:  R
Instruction Fields:
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
C = Register index of operand rC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>0x20</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>0x3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cmpeqi

compare equal immediate

Operation:  
if (rA \equiv (IMM16))
then rB \leftarrow 1
else rB \leftarrow 0

Assembler Syntax:  
cmpeqi rB, rA, IMM16

Example:  
cmpeqi r6, r7, 100

Description:  
Sign-extends the 16-bit immediate value IMM16 to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA == \sigma (IMM16), cmpeqi stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

Usage:  
cmpeqi performs the == operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type:  
I

Instruction Fields:  
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x20 |
**cmpge**
cmpge compare greater than or equal signed

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } ((\text{signed}) \, rA \geq (\text{signed}) \, rB) \\
\text{then } rC \leftarrow 1 \\
\text{else } rC \leftarrow 0
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

\[\text{cmpge } rC, rA, rB\]

**Example:**

\[\text{cmpge } r6, r7, r8\]

**Description:**

If \( rA \geq rB \), then stores 1 to \( rC \); otherwise stores 0 to \( rC \).

**Usage:**

\text{cmpge} \text{ performs the signed } \geq \text{ operation of the C programming language.}

**Instruction Type:**

\( R \)

**Instruction Fields:**

\( A = \) Register index of operand \( rA \)  
\( B = \) Register index of operand \( rB \)  
\( C = \) Register index of operand \( rC \)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x08 | 0  | 0x3a |
cmpgei

compare greater than or equal signed immediate

Operation: if ((signed) rA >= (signed) σ(IMM16)) then rB ← 1 else rB ← 0

Assembler Syntax: cmpgei rB, rA, IMM16

Example: cmpgei r6, r7, 100

Description: Sign-extends the 16-bit immediate value IMM16 to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA >= σ(IMM16), then cmpgei stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

Usage: cmpgei performs the signed >= operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: R

Instruction Fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Register index of operand rA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Register index of operand rB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>16-bit signed immediate value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A   | B   | IMM16 | 0x08 |
cmpgeu
compare greater than or equal unsigned

Operation:  
if ((unsigned) rA >= (unsigned) rB)
then rC ← 1
else rC ← 0

Assembler Syntax:  
cmpgeu rC, rA, rB

Example:  
cmpgeu r6, r7, r8

Description:  
If rA >= rB, then stores 1 to rC; otherwise stores 0 to rC.

Usage:  
cmpgeu performs the unsigned >= operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type:  
R

Instruction Fields:  
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
C = Register index of operand rC

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x28</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cmpgeui
compare greater than or equal unsigned immediate

Operation:  if ((unsigned) rA >= (unsigned) (0x0000 : IMM16))
            then rB ← 1
            else rB ← 0

Assembler Syntax:  cmpgeui rB, rA, IMM16

Example:  cmpgeui r6, r7, 100

Description:  Zero-extends the 16-bit immediate value IMM16 to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA >= (0x0000 : IMM16), then cmpgeui stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

Usage:  cmpgeui performs the unsigned >= operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type:  I

Instruction Fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Register index of operand rA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Register index of operand rB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>16-bit unsigned immediate value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>IMM16</th>
<th>0x28</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
Operation:

if ((signed) rA > (signed) rB)
then rC ← 1
else rC ← 0

Assembler Syntax:  

`cmpgt rC, rA, rB`

Example:

`cmpgt r6, r7, r8`

Description:

If rA > rB, then stores 1 to rC; otherwise stores 0 to rC.

Usage:

`cmpgt` performs the signed > operation of the C programming language.

Pseudoinstruction:

`cmpgt` is implemented with the `cmplt` instruction by swapping its rA and rB operands.
**cmpgti**  
*compare greater than signed immediate*

**Operation:**  
if ((signed) rA > (signed) IMMED)  
then rB ← 1  
else rB ← 0

**Assembler Syntax:**  
`cmpgti rB, rA, IMMED`

**Example:**  
`cmpgti r6, r7, 100`

**Description:**  
Sign-extends the immediate value IMMED to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA > σ(IMMED), then *cmpgti* stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

**Usage:**  
*cmpgti* performs the signed > operation of the C programming language. The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 32766. The minimum allowed value is −32769.

**Pseudoinstruction:**  
*cmpgti* is implemented using a *cmpgei* instruction with an immediate value IMMED + 1.
cmpgtu

compare greater than unsigned

Operation: \[
\text{if } ((\text{unsigned}) \ rA > (\text{unsigned}) \ rB) \\
\text{then } rC \leftarrow 1 \\
\text{else } rC \leftarrow 0
\]

Assembler Syntax: \text{cmpgtu rC, rA, rB}

Example: \text{cmpgtu r6, r7, r8}

Description: If \( rA > rB \), then stores 1 to \( rC \); otherwise stores 0 to \( rC \).

Usage: \text{cmpgtu} performs the unsigned > operation of the C programming language.

Pseudoinstruction: \text{cmpgtu} is implemented with the \text{cmpltu} instruction by swapping its \( rA \) and \( rB \) operands.
cmpgtui
compare greater than unsigned immediate

Operation: if ((unsigned) rA > (unsigned) IMMED)
then rB ← 1
else rB ← 0

Assembler Syntax: cmpgtui rB, rA, IMMED

Example: cmpgtui r6, r7, 100

Description: Zero-extends the immediate value IMMED to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA > IMMED, then cmpgtui stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

Usage: cmpgtui performs the unsigned > operation of the C programming language. The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 65534. The minimum allowed value is 0.

Pseudoinstruction: cmpgtui is implemented using a cmpgeui instruction with an immediate value IMMED + 1.
Operation: if ((signed) rA <= (signed) rB)
            then rC ← 1
            else rC ← 0

Assembler Syntax: cmple rC, rA, rB

Example: cmple r6, r7, r8

Description: If rA <= rB, then stores 1 to rC; otherwise stores 0 to rC.

Usage: cmple performs the signed <= operation of the C programming language.

Pseudoinstruction: cmple is implemented with the cmpge instruction by swapping its rA and rB operands.
**cmplei**

**compare less than or equal signed immediate**

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } ((\text{signed}) \ rA < (\text{signed}) \ \text{IMMED}) \\
\text{then } rB \leftarrow 1 \\
\text{else } rB \leftarrow 0
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

cmplei rB, rA, IMMED

**Example:**

cmplei r6, r7, 100

**Description:** Sign-extends the immediate value IMMED to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA \(\leq\) \(\sigma\)(IMMED), then cmplei stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

**Usage:**

cmplei performs the signed \(\leq\) operation of the C programming language. The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 32766. The minimum allowed value is –32769.

**Pseudoinstruction:**

cmplei is implemented using a cmplti instruction with an immediate value IMMED + 1.
**cmlpeu**

**Operation:**
\[
\text{if } ((\text{unsigned}) \ rA < (\text{unsigned}) \ rB) \\
\text{then } rC \leftarrow 1 \\
\text{else } rC \leftarrow 0
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**
cmlpeu rC, rA, rB

**Example:**
cmlpeu r6, r7, r8

**Description:**
If \( rA \leq rB \), then stores 1 to \( rC \); otherwise stores 0 to \( rC \).

**Usage:**
cmlpeu performs the unsigned \( \leq \) operation of the C programming language.

**Pseudoinstruction:**
cmlpeu is implemented with the cmpgeu instruction by swapping its \( rA \) and \( rB \) operands.
**cmpleui**

*compare less than or equal unsigned immediate*

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } ((\text{unsigned}) \ rA \leq (\text{unsigned}) \ IMMED) \\
\text{then } rB \leftarrow 1 \\
\text{else } rB \leftarrow 0
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

`cmpleui rB, rA, IMMED`

**Example:**

`cmpleui r6, r7, 100`

**Description:**
Zero-extends the immediate value IMMED to 32 bits and compares it to the value of \( rA \). If \( rA \leq IMMED \), then *cmpleui* stores 1 to \( rB \); otherwise stores 0 to \( rB \).

**Usage:**

*cmpleui* performs the unsigned \( \leq \) operation of the C programming language. The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 65534. The minimum allowed value is 0.

**Pseudoinstruction:**

*cmpleui* is implemented using a *cmpltui* instruction with an immediate value IMMED + 1.
Operation:
if ((signed) rA < (signed) rB)
then rC ← 1
else rC ← 0

Assembler Syntax:
cmplt rC, rA, rB

Example:
cmplt r6, r7, r8

Description:
If rA < rB, then stores 1 to rC; otherwise stores 0 to rC.

Usage:
cmplt performs the signed < operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: R
Instruction Fields:
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
C = Register index of operand rC
**cmplti**

*compare less than signed immediate*

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } ((\text{signed}) \ rA < (\text{signed}) \ σ (\text{IMM16})) \\
\text{then } rB \leftarrow 1 \\
\text{else } rB \leftarrow 0
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

\text{cmplti } rB, rA, IMM16

**Example:**

\text{cmplti } r6, r7, 100

**Description:** Sign-extends the 16-bit immediate value IMM16 to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If \( rA < σ (\text{IMM16}) \), then \text{cmplti} stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

**Usage:** \text{cmplti} performs the signed < operation of the C programming language.

**Instruction Type:** I

**Instruction Fields:**

- A = Register index of operand rA
- B = Register index of operand rB
- IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

![Instruction Field Layout](image-url)
**cmpltu**

*compare less than unsigned*

**Operation:**

\[
\text{if } ((\text{unsigned}) \ rA < (\text{unsigned}) \ rB) \\
\text{then } rC \leftarrow 1 \\
\text{else } rC \leftarrow 0
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

`cmpltu \ rC, \ rA, \ rB`

**Example:**

`cmpltu \ r6, \ r7, \ r8`

**Description:**

If \( rA < rB \), then stores 1 to \( rC \); otherwise stores 0 to \( rC \).

**Usage:**

`cmpltu` performs the unsigned < operation of the C programming language.

**Instruction Type:**

R

**Instruction Fields:**

- A = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- B = Register index of operand \( rB \)
- C = Register index of operand \( rC \)

```
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| A | B | C | 0x30 | 0 | 0x3a |
```
cmpltui

compare less than unsigned immediate

Operation:
if ((unsigned) rA < (unsigned) (0x0000 : IMM16))
then rB ← 1
else rB ← 0

Assembler Syntax:  
cmpltui  rB, rA, IMM16

Example:  
cmpltui  r6, r7, 100

Description: Zero-extends the 16-bit immediate value IMM16 to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA < (0x0000 : IMM16), then cmpltui stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

Usage: cmpltui performs the unsigned < operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type:  
I

Instruction Fields:  
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
IMM16 = 16-bit unsigned immediate value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>0x30</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cmpne

compare not equal

Operation:
if (rA != rB)
then rC ← 1
else rC ← 0

Assembler Syntax:
cmpne rC, rA, rB

Example:
cmpne r6, r7, r8

Description:
If rA != rB, then stores 1 to rC; otherwise stores 0 to rC.

Usage:
cmpne performs the != operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: R
Instruction Fields:
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
C = Register index of operand rC

```
 31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10  9  8  7  6  5  4  3  2  1  0
  A   B   C    0x18    0    0x3a
```
cmpnei

cmpnei
compare not equal immediate

Operation: if (rA != σ (IMM16))
then rB ← 1
else rB ← 0

Assembler Syntax: cmpnei rB, rA, IMM16

Example: cmpnei r6, r7, 100

Description: Sign-extends the 16-bit immediate value IMM16 to 32 bits and compares it to the value of rA. If rA != σ (IMM16), then cmpnei stores 1 to rB; otherwise stores 0 to rB.

Usage: cmpnei performs the != operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: I

Instruction Fields:
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>0x18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Operation:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{if } c &= 1 \\
\text{then } rC &\leftarrow f_N(rA, rB, A, B, C) \\
\text{else } \emptyset &\leftarrow f_N(rA, rB, A, B, C)
\end{align*}
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

custom \(N, xC, xA, xB\)

Where \(xA\) means either general purpose register \(rA\), or custom register \(cA\).

**Example:**

custom 0, c6, r7, r8

**Description:**

The custom opcode provides access to up to 256 custom instructions allowed by the Nios II architecture. The function implemented by a custom instruction is user-defined and is specified at system generation time. The 8-bit immediate \(N\) field specifies which custom instruction to use. Custom instructions can use up to two parameters, \(xA\) and \(xB\), and can optionally write the result to a register \(xC\).

**Usage:**

To access a custom register inside the custom instruction logic, clear the bit readra, readrb, or writerc that corresponds to the register field. In assembler syntax, the notation \(cN\) refers to register \(N\) in the custom register file and causes the assembler to clear the \(c\) bit of the opcode. For example, custom 0, c3, r5, r0 performs custom instruction 0, operating on general-purpose registers r5 and r0, and stores the result in custom register 3.

**Instruction Type:**

R

**Instruction Fields:**

- \(A\) = Register index of operand A
- \(B\) = Register index of operand B
- \(C\) = Register index of operand C
- \(N\) = 8-bit number that selects instruction
- \(\text{readra} = 1\) if instruction uses \(rA\), 0 otherwise
- \(\text{readrb} = 1\) if instruction uses \(rB\), 0 otherwise
- \(\text{writerc} = 1\) if instruction provides result for \(rC\), 0 otherwise

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  |    | N  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 0x32|

readra  
readrb  
writerc
**div**  
**divide**

**Operation:**  
rC ← rA ÷ rB

**Assembler Syntax:**  
`div rC, rA, rB`

**Example:**  
`div r6, r7, r8`

**Description:**  
Treating rA and rB as signed integers, this instruction divides rA by rB and then stores the integer portion of the resulting quotient to rC. After attempted division by zero, the value of rC is undefined. There is no divide-by-zero exception. After dividing –2147483648 by –1, the value of rC is undefined (the number +2147483648 is not representable in 32 bits). There is no overflow exception.

Nios II processors that do not implement the div instruction cause an unimplemented-instruction exception.

**Usage:**  
Remainder of Division:

If the result of the division is defined, then the remainder can be computed in rD using the following instruction sequence:

```
div rC, rA, rB  ; The original div operation
mul rD, rC, rB
sub rD, rA, rD ; rD = remainder
```

**Instruction Type:**  
R

**Instruction Fields:**  
A = Register index of operand rA  
B = Register index of operand rB  
C = Register index of operand rC

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x25 | 0  | 0x3a |
**divu**

divide unsigned

**Operation:**
\[ rC \leftarrow rA \div rB \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
divu rC, rA, rB

**Example:**
divu r6, r7, r8

**Description:**
Treating \( rA \) and \( rB \) as unsigned integers, this instruction divides \( rA \) by \( rB \) and then stores the integer portion of the resulting quotient to \( rC \). After attempted division by zero, the value of \( rC \) is undefined. There is no divide-by-zero exception.

Nios II processors that do not implement the `divu` instruction cause an unimplemented-instruction exception.

**Usage:**

**Remainder of Division:**

If the result of the division is defined, then the remainder can be computed in \( rD \) using the following instruction sequence:

```
divu rC, rA, rB ; The original divu operation
mul rD, rC, rB
sub rD, rA, rD ; rD = remainder
```

**Instruction Type:** R

**Instruction Fields:**
- A = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- B = Register index of operand \( rB \)
- C = Register index of operand \( rC \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0x24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### eret

**exception return**

**Operation:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{status} & \leftarrow \text{estatus} \\
\text{PC} & \leftarrow \text{ea}
\end{align*}
\]

**Assembler Syntax:**

```assembler
eret
```

**Example:**

```assembler
eret
```

**Description:**
Copies the value of `estatus` into the `status` register, and transfers execution to the address in `ea`.

**Usage:**
Use `eret` to return from traps, external interrupts, and other exception-handling routines. Note that before returning from hardware interrupt exceptions, the exception handler must adjust the `ea` register.

**Instruction Type:**

R

**Instruction Fields:**

None

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x1d</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x01</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
flushd
flush data cache line

**Operation:** Flushes the data-cache line associated with address rA + \( \sigma \) (IMM16).

**Assembler Syntax:** `flushd IMM16(rA)`

**Example:** `flushd -100(r6)`

**Description:** If the Nios II processor implements a direct mapped data cache, `flushd` flushes the cache line that is mapped to the specified address, regardless whether the addressed data is currently cached. This entails the following steps:

- Computes the effective address specified by the sum of rA and the signed 16-bit immediate value
- Identifies the data-cache line associated with the computed effective address. `flushd` ignores the cache line tag, which means that it flushes the cache line regardless whether the specified data location is currently cached
- If the line is dirty, writes the line back to memory
- Clears the valid bit for the line

A cache line is dirty when one or more words of the cache line have been modified by the processor, but are not yet written to memory.

If the Nios II processor core does not have a data cache, the `flushd` instruction performs no operation.

**Usage:** `flushd` flushes the cache line even if the addressed memory location is not in the cache. By contrast, the `flushda` instruction does nothing if the addressed memory location is not in the cache.

For more information on data cache, see the Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory chapter in the Nios II Software Developer's Handbook.

**Instruction Type:** I

**Instruction Fields:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Register index of operand rA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>16-bit signed immediate value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Bit | 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A   | 0  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 0x3b|

A cache line is dirty when one or more words of the cache line have been modified by the processor, but are not yet written to memory.
**flushda**

**flush data-cache address**

**Operation:** Flushes the data cache line currently caching address rA + σ (IMM16)

**Assembler Syntax:** `flushda IMM16(rA)`

**Example:** `flushda -100(r6)`

**Description:** If the addressed data is currently cached, `flushda` flushes the cache line mapped to that address. This entails the following steps:
- Computes the effective address specified by the sum of rA and the signed 16-bit immediate value
- Identifies the data-cache line associated with the computed effective address.
- Compares the cache line tag with the effective address. If they do not match, the effective address is not cached, and the instruction does nothing.
- If the tag matches, and the data cache contains dirty data, writes the dirty cache line back to memory.
- Clears the valid bit for the line

A cache line is dirty when one or more words of the cache line have been modified by the processor, but are not yet written to memory.

If the Nios II processor core does not have a data cache, the `flushda` instruction performs no operation.

**Usage:** `flushda` flushes the cache line only if the addressed memory location is currently cached. By contrast, the `flushd` instruction flushes the cache line even if the addressed memory location is not cached.

For more information on the Nios II data cache, see the *Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory* chapter in the *Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook*.

**Instruction Type:** I

**Instruction Fields:** A = Register index of operand rA
IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>0x1b</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
flushi
flush instruction cache line

Operation: Flushes the instruction-cache line associated with address rA.

Assembler Syntax: flushi rA

Example: flushi r6

Description: Ignoring the tag, flushi identifies the instruction-cache line associated with the byte address in rA, and invalidates that line.

If the Nios II processor core does not have an instruction cache, the flushi instruction performs no operation.

For more information on data cache, see the Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory chapter in the Nios II Software Developer's Handbook.

Instruction Type: R

Instruction Fields: A = Register index of operand rA

| 31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| A                | 0                | 0                | 0x0c         | 0            | 0x3a         |
flushp
flush pipeline

Operation: Flushes the processor pipeline of any pre-fetched instructions.
Assembler Syntax: flushp
Example: flushp
Description: Ensures that any instructions pre-fetched after the flushp instruction are removed from the pipeline.
Usage: Use flushp before transferring control to newly updated instruction memory.

Instruction Type: R
Instruction Fields: None

| 31  | 30  | 29  | 28  | 27  | 26  | 25  | 24  | 23  | 22  | 21  | 20  | 19  | 18  | 17  | 16  | 15  | 14  | 13  | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 0   | 0   | 0   | 0x4 | 0   | 0x3 | a   |
**initd**

initialize data cache line

**Operation:**
Initializes the data-cache line associated with address \( rA + \sigma \) (IMM16).

**Assembler Syntax:**
`initd IMM16(rA)`

**Example:**
`initd 0(r6)`

**Description:**
`initd` computes the effective address specified by the sum of \( rA \) and the signed 16-bit immediate value. Ignoring the tag, `initd` identifies the data-cache line associated with the effective address, and then `initd` invalidates that line.

If the Nios II processor core does not have a data cache, the `initd` instruction performs no operation.

**Usage:**
The instruction is used to initialize the processor's data cache. After processor reset and before accessing data memory, use `initd` to invalidate each line of the data cache.

For more information on data cache, see the *Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory* chapter in the *Nios II Software Developer's Handbook*.

**Instruction Type:**
I

**Instruction Fields:**
- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  |
| A  | 0  | IMM16 | 0x33 |
**initi**

initialize instruction cache line

**Operation:** Initializes the instruction-cache line associated with address rA.

**Assembler Syntax:** initi rA

**Example:** initi r6

**Description:** Ignoring the tag, initi identifies the instruction-cache line associated with the byte address in ra, and initi invalidates that line.

If the Nios II processor core does not have an instruction cache, the initi instruction performs no operation.

**Usage:** This instruction is used to initialize the processor's instruction cache. Immediately after processor reset, use initi to invalidate each line of the instruction cache.

For more information on instruction cache, see the Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory chapter in the Nios II Software Developer's Handbook.

**Instruction Type:** R

**Instruction Fields:** A = Register index of operand rA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0x29</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0x3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
jmp

computed jump

Operation:  
Assembler Syntax:  
Example:  
Description:  
Usage:  
Instruction Type:  
Instruction Fields:  

| Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit | Bit |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 31  | 30  | 29  | 28  | 27  | 26  | 25  | 24  | 23  | 22  | 21  | 20  | 19  | 18  | 17  | 16  | 15  | 14  | 13  | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7   | 6   |
| A   | 0   | 0   | 0x0d| 0   | 0x3a|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
**ldb / ldbio**

**load byte from memory or I/O peripheral**

**Operation:**

\[ rB \leftarrow \sigma (\text{Mem8}[rA + \sigma (\text{IMM16})]) \]

**Assembler Syntax:**

- `ldb rB, byte_offset(rA)`
- `ldbio rB, byte_offset(rA)`

**Example:**

`ldb r6, 100(r5)`

**Description:**

Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of `rA` and the instruction's signed 16-bit immediate value. Loads register `rB` with the desired memory byte, sign extending the 8-bit value to 32 bits. In Nios II processor cores with a data cache, this instruction may retrieve the desired data from the cache instead of from memory.

**Usage:**

Use the `ldbio` instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, `ldbio` bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon data transfer. In processors without a data cache, `ldbio` acts like `ldb`.

For more information on data cache, see the *Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory* chapter in the *Nios II Software Developer's Handbook*.

**Instruction Type:**

I

**Instruction Fields:**

- `A` = Register index of operand `rA`
- `B` = Register index of operand `rB`
- `IMM16` = 16-bit signed immediate value

---

### Instruction format for `ldb`

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x07 |

---

### Instruction format for `ldbio`

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
ldbu / ldbuio
load unsigned byte from memory or I/O peripheral

Operation: \( rB \leftarrow 0x000000 : \text{Mem8}[rA + \sigma(\text{IMM16})] \)

Assembler Syntax:
- `ldbu rB, byte_offset(rA)`
- `ldbuio rB, byte_offset(rA)`

Example:
- `ldbu r6, 100(r5)`

Description:
Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of rA and the instruction's signed 16-bit immediate value. Loads register rB with the desired memory byte, zero extending the 8-bit value to 32 bits.

Usage:
In processors with a data cache, this instruction may retrieve the desired data from the cache instead of from memory. Use the `ldbuio` instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, `ldbuio` bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon data transfer. In processors without a data cache, `ldbuio` acts like `ldbu`.

For more information on data cache, see the *Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory* chapter in the *Nios II Software Developer's Handbook*.

Instruction Type: I

Instruction Fields:
- A = Register index of operand rA
- B = Register index of operand rB
- IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

### Instruction format for `ldbu`

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x03 |

### Instruction format for `ldbuio`

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x23 |
ldh / ldhio
load halfword from memory or I/O peripheral

Operation: \( r_B \leftarrow \sigma (\text{Mem16}[r_A + \sigma (\text{IMM16})]) \)

Assembler Syntax:
- \( \text{ldh} \ r_B, \text{byte_offset}(r_A) \)
- \( \text{ldhio} \ r_B, \text{byte_offset}(r_A) \)

Example:
\( \text{ldh} \ r_6, 100(r_5) \)

Description:
Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of \( r_A \) and the instruction's signed 16-bit immediate value. Loads register \( r_B \) with the memory halfword located at the effective byte address, sign extending the 16-bit value to 32 bits. The effective byte address must be halfword aligned. If the byte address is not a multiple of 2, the operation is undefined.

Usage:
In processors with a data cache, this instruction may retrieve the desired data from the cache instead of from memory. Use the \( \text{ldhio} \) instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, \( \text{ldhio} \) bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon data transfer. In processors without a data cache, \( \text{ldhio} \) acts like \( \text{ldh} \).

For more information on data cache, see the Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory chapter in the Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook.

Instruction Type: I

Instruction Fields:
- \( A = \) Register index of operand \( r_A \)
- \( B = \) Register index of operand \( r_B \)
- \( \text{IMM16} = 16\text{-bit signed immediate value} \)

Instruction format for \( \text{ldh} \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccccccccccc}
A & B & \text{IMM16} & 0x0f \\
\end{array}
\]

Instruction format for \( \text{ldhio} \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccccccccccccccccc}
A & B & \text{IMM16} & 0x2f \\
\end{array}
\]
ldhu / ldhuio
load unsigned halfword from memory or I/O peripheral

Operation:
\[ rB \leftarrow 0x0000 : \text{Mem}16[rA + \sigma (\text{IMM16})] \]

Assembler Syntax:
- \text{ldhu} rB, \text{byte_offset}(rA)
- \text{ldhuio} rB, \text{byte_offset}(rA)

Example:
- \text{ldhu} r6, 100(r5)

Description:
Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of rA and the instruction’s signed 16-bit immediate value. Loads register rB with the memory halfword located at the effective byte address, zero extending the 16-bit value to 32 bits. The effective byte address must be halfword aligned. If the byte address is not a multiple of 2, the operation is undefined.

Usage:
In processors with a data cache, this instruction may retrieve the desired data from the cache instead of from memory. Use the \text{ldhuio} instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, \text{ldhuio} bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon data transfer. In processors without a data cache, \text{ldhuio} acts like \text{ldhu}.

For more information on data cache, see the \textit{Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory} chapter in the \textit{Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook}.

Instruction Type: \( I \)

Instruction Fields:
- \( A = \) Register index of operand rA
- \( B = \) Register index of operand rB
- \( \text{IMM16} = 16\)-bit signed immediate value

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
31 & 30 & 29 & 28 & 27 & 26 \\
A & B & \text{IMM16} & & & \\
0x0b & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

Instruction format for \text{ldhu}

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
31 & 30 & 29 & 28 & 27 & 26 \\
A & B & \text{IMM16} & & & \\
0x2b & & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

Instruction format for \text{ldhuio}
**ldw / ldwio**

**load 32-bit word from memory or I/O peripheral**

**Operation:**

\[ rB \leftarrow \text{Mem32}[rA + \sigma (IMM14)] \]

**Assembler Syntax:**

- `ldw rB, byte_offset(rA)`
- `ldwio rB, byte_offset(rA)`

**Example:**

`ldw r6, 100(r5)`

**Description:**

Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of `rA` and the instruction's signed 16-bit immediate value. Loads register `rB` with the memory word located at the effective byte address. The effective byte address must be word aligned. If the byte address is not a multiple of 4, the operation is undefined.

**Usage:**

In processors with a data cache, this instruction may retrieve the desired data from the cache instead of from memory. Use the `ldwio` instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, `ldwio` bypasses the cache and memory. Use the `ldwio` instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, `ldwio` bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon data transfer. In processors without a data cache, `ldwio` acts like `ldw`.

For more information on data cache, see the *Cache & Tightly-Coupled Memory* chapter in the *Nios II Software Developer’s Handbook*.

**Instruction Type:**

`I`

**Instruction Fields:**

- `A` = Register index of operand `rA`
- `B` = Register index of operand `rB`
- `IMM16` = 16-bit signed immediate value

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>0x17</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Instruction format for `ldw`

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>0x37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Instruction format for `ldwio`
**mov**

move register to register

**Operation:** \( rC \leftarrow rA \)

**Assembler Syntax:** `mov rC, rA`

**Example:** `mov r6, r7`

**Description:** Moves the contents of \( rA \) to \( rC \).

**Pseudoinstruction:** `mov` is implemented as `add rC, rA, r0`. 
**movhi**
move immediate into high halfword

**Operation:**
\[ rB \leftarrow (\text{IMMED} : 0x0000) \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
\[
\text{movhi} \ rB, \ \text{IMMED}
\]

**Example:**
\[
\text{movhi} \ r6, \ 0x8000
\]

**Description:**
Writes the immediate value IMMED into the high halfword of rB, and clears the lower halfword of rB to 0x0000.

**Usage:**
The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 65535. The minimum allowed value is 0. To load a 32-bit constant into a register, first load the upper 16 bits using a `movhi` pseudoinstruction. The `%hi()` macro can be used to extract the upper 16 bits of a constant or a label. Then, load the lower 16 bits with an `ori` instruction. The `%lo()` macro can be used to extract the lower 16 bits of a constant or label as shown below.

\[
\text{movhi} \ rB, \ %\text{hi}(\text{value}) \\
\text{ori} \ rB, \ rB, \ %\text{lo}(\text{value})
\]

An alternative method to load a 32-bit constant into a register uses the `%hiadj()` macro and the `addi` instruction as shown below.

\[
\text{movhi} \ rB, \ %\text{hiadj}(\text{value}) \\
\text{addi} \ rB, \ rB, \ %\text{lo}(\text{value})
\]

**Pseudoinstruction:**
`movhi` is implemented as `orhi rB, r0, IMMED`. 
### movi

**move signed immediate into word**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>rB ← σ(IMMED)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assembler Syntax</td>
<td>movi rB, IMMED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>movi r6, -30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Sign-extends the immediate value IMMED to 32 bits and writes it to rB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage</td>
<td>The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 32767. The minimum allowed value is -32768. To load a 32-bit constant into a register, see the movhi instruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudoinstruction</td>
<td>movi is implemented as addi rB, r0, IMMED.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**movia**

move immediate address into word

**Operation:**

\[ rB \leftarrow \text{label} \]

**Assembler Syntax:**

`movia rB, label`

**Example:**

`movia r6, function_address`

**Description:**

Writes the address of label to rB.

**Pseudoinstruction:**

`movia` is implemented as:

- `orhi rB, r0, %hiadj(label)`
- `addi rB, rB, %lo(label)`
### movui
**move unsigned immediate into word**

**Operation:**
\[ rB \leftarrow (0x0000 : \text{IMMED}) \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
movui rB, IMMED

**Example:**
movui r6, 100

**Description:**
Zero-extends the immediate value IMMED to 32 bits and writes it to rB.

**Usage:**
The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 65535. The minimum allowed value is 0. To load a 32-bit constant into a register, see the movhi instruction.

**Pseudoinstruction:**
movui is implemented as ori rB, r0, IMMED.
**mul**

**multiply**

**Operation:** 
\[ rC \leftarrow (rA \times rB)_{31,0} \]

**Assembler Syntax:** 
\[ \text{mul } rC, rA, rB \]

**Example:** 
\[ \text{mul } r6, r7, r8 \]

**Description:** 
Multiplies \( rA \) times \( rB \) and stores the 32 low-order bits of the product to \( rC \). The result is the same whether the operands are treated as signed or unsigned integers.

Nios II processors that do not implement the \textit{mul} instruction cause an unimplemented-instruction exception.

**Usage:**

**Carry Detection (unsigned operands):**

Before or after the multiply operation, the carry out of the MSB of \( rC \) can be detected using the following instruction sequence:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{mul } rC, rA, rB &; \text{ The mul operation (optional)} \\
\text{mulxuu } rD, rA, rB &; \text{ } rD \text{ is non-zero if carry occurred} \\
\text{cmpne } rD, rD, r0 & ; rD \text{ is 1 if carry occurred, 0 if not}
\end{align*}
\]

The \textit{mulxuu} instruction writes a non-zero value into \( rD \) if the multiplication of unsigned numbers will generate a carry (unsigned overflow). If a 0/1 result is desired, follow the \textit{mulxuu} with the \textit{cmpne} instruction.

**Overflow Detection (signed operands):**

After the multiply operation, overflow can be detected using the following instruction sequence:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{mul } rC, rA, rB &; \text{ The original mul operation} \\
\text{cmplt } rD, rC, r0 & \\
\text{mulxss } rE, rA, rB & \\
\text{add } rD, rD, rE &; rD \text{ is non-zero if overflow} \\
\text{cmpne } rD, rD, r0 & ; rD \text{ is 1 if overflow, 0 if not}
\end{align*}
\]

The \textit{cmplt-mulxss-add} instruction sequence writes a non-zero value into \( rD \) if the product in \( rC \) cannot be represented in 32 bits (signed overflow). If a 0/1 result is desired, follow the instruction sequence with the \textit{cmpne} instruction.

**Instruction Type:** 
\( R \)

**Instruction Fields:**

\( A = \text{Register index of operand } rA \)

\( B = \text{Register index of operand } rB \)

\( C = \text{Register index of operand } rC \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x27</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
muli
multiply immediate

**Operation:**
\[ r_B \leftarrow (r_A \times \sigma(IMM16))_{31..0} \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
muli rB, rA, IMM16

**Example:**
muli r6, r7, -100

**Description:**
Sign-extends the 16-bit immediate value IMM16 to 32 bits and multiplies it by the value of rA. Stores the 32 low-order bits of the product to rB. The result is independent of whether rA is treated as a signed or unsigned number.

Nios II processors that do not implement the `muli` instruction cause an unimplemented-instruction exception.

**Carry Detection and Overflow Detection:**
For a discussion of carry and overflow detection, see the `mul` instruction.

**Instruction Type:** I

**Instruction Fields:**
- \( A = \) Register index of operand rA
- \( B = \) Register index of operand rB
- \( IMM16 = 16\)-bit signed immediate value

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x24 |
**mulxss**

**multiply extended signed/signed**

**Operation:**
\[ rC \leftarrow ((\text{signed}) rA) \times ((\text{signed}) rB) \]_{63..32}

**Assembler Syntax:**
mulxss rC, rA, rB

**Example:**
mulxss r6, r7, r8

**Description:**
Treating rA and rB as signed integers, **mulxss** multiplies rA times rB, and stores the 32 high-order bits of the product to rC.

Nios II processors that do not implement the **mulxss** instruction cause an unimplemented-instruction exception.

**Usage:**
Use **mulxss** and **mul** to compute the full 64-bit product of two 32-bit signed integers. Furthermore, **mulxss** can be used as part of the calculation of a 128-bit product of two 64-bit signed integers. Given two 64-bit integers, each contained in a pair of 32-bit registers, \((S1 : U1)\) and \((S2 : U2)\), their 128-bit product is \((U1 \times U2) + ((S1 \times U2) \ll 32) + ((U1 \times S2) \ll 32) + ((S1 \times S2) \ll 64)\). The **mulxss** and **mul** instructions are used to calculate the 64-bit product \(S1 \times S2\).

**Instruction Type:**
R

**Instruction Fields:**
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
C = Register index of operand rC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x1f</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
multiply extended signed/unsigned

**mulxsu**

**Operation:**
\[ rC \leftarrow ((\text{signed} \ rA) \times ((\text{unsigned} \ rB)))_{63..32} \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
`mulxsu rC, rA, rB`

**Example:**
`mulxsu r6, r7, r8`

**Description:**
Treating \( rA \) as a signed integer and \( rB \) as an unsigned integer, `mulxsu` multiplies \( rA \) times \( rB \), and stores the 32 high-order bits of the product to \( rC \).

Nios II processors that do not implement the `mulxsu` instruction cause an unimplemented-instruction exception.

**Usage:**
`mulxsu` can be used as part of the calculation of a 128-bit product of two 64-bit signed integers. Given two 64-bit integers, each contained in a pair of 32-bit registers, \((S1 : U1)\) and \((S2 : U2)\), their 128-bit product is: \((U1 \times U2) + ((S1 \times U2) \ll 32) + ((U1 \times S2) \ll 32) + ((S1 \times S2) \ll 64)\). The `mulxsu` and `mul` instructions are used to calculate the two 64-bit products \( S1 \times U2 \) and \( U1 \times S2 \).

**Instruction Type:**
R

**Instruction Fields:**
A = Register index of operand \( rA \)
B = Register index of operand \( rB \)
C = Register index of operand \( rC \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0x17</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0x3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 31  | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
mulxuu

multiply extended unsigned/unsigned

Operation: \( rC \leftarrow ((\text{unsigned}) \ rA) \times ((\text{unsigned}) \ rB))_{63.32} \)

Assembler Syntax: `mulxuu rC, rA, rB`

Example: `mulxuu r6, r7, r8`

Description: Treating \( rA \) and \( rB \) as unsigned integers, `mulxuu` multiplies \( rA \) times \( rB \) and stores the 32 high-order bits of the product to \( rC \).

Nios II processors that do not implement the `mulxss` instruction cause an unimplemented-instruction exception.

Usage: Use `mulxuu` and `mul` to compute the 64-bit product of two 32-bit unsigned integers. Furthermore, `mulxuu` can be used as part of the calculation of a 128-bit product of two 64-bit signed integers. Given two 64-bit signed integers, each contained in a pair of 32-bit registers, \((S1 : U1)\) and \((S2 : U2)\), their 128-bit product is \((U1 \times U2) + ((S1 \times U2) << 32) + ((U1 \times S2) << 32) + ((S1 \times S2) << 64)\). The `mulxuu` and `mul` instructions are used to calculate the 64-bit product \( U1 \times U2 \).

`mulxuu` also can be used as part of the calculation of a 128-bit product of two 64-bit unsigned integers. Given two 64-bit unsigned integers, each contained in a pair of 32-bit registers, \((T1 : U1)\) and \((T2 : U2)\), their 128-bit product is \((U1 \times U2) + ((U1 \times T2) << 32) + ((T1 \times U2) << 32) + ((T1 \times T2) << 64)\). The `mulxuu` and `mul` instructions are used to calculate the four 64-bit products \( U1 \times U2, U1 \times T2, T1 \times U2, \) and \( T1 \times T2 \).

Instruction Type: \( R \)

Instruction Fields:

- \( A = \) Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B = \) Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( C = \) Register index of operand \( rC \)

| A | B | C | 0x07 | 0 | 0x3a |
### nextpc

**get address of following instruction**

**Operation:**
\[ rC \leftarrow PC + 4 \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
`nextpc rC`

**Example:**
`nextpc r6`

**Description:**
Stores the address of the next instruction to register rC.

**Usage:**
A relocatable code fragment can use `nextpc` to calculate the address of its data segment. `nextpc` is the only way to access the PC directly.

**Instruction Type:**
R

**Instruction Fields:**
\[ C = \text{Register index of operand } rC \]

```
 31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10  9  8  7  6  5  4  3  2  1  0
 0  0  C  0x1c  0  0x3a
```
**nop**

no operation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assembler Syntax</td>
<td>nop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>nop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>nop does nothing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudoinstruction</td>
<td>nop is implemented as add r0, r0, r0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operation: \( rC \leftarrow \neg(rA \lor rB) \)

Assembler Syntax: `nor rC, rA, rB`

Example: `nor r6, r7, r8`

Description: Calculates the bitwise logical NOR of \( rA \) and \( rB \) and stores the result in \( rC \).

Instruction Type: \( R \)

Instruction Fields:
- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B \) = Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( C \) = Register index of operand \( rC \)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x06 | 0  | 0x3a |
or

bitwise logical or

Operation: \( rC \leftarrow rA \mid rB \)
Assembler Syntax: \( \text{or } rC, rA, rB \)
Example: \( \text{or } r6, r7, r8 \)
Description: Calculates the bitwise logical OR of \( rA \) and \( rB \) and stores the result in \( rC \).

Instruction Type: \( R \)
Instruction Fields:
- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B \) = Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( C \) = Register index of operand \( rC \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>0x16</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0x3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
**orhi**

bitwise logical or immediate into high halfword

**Operation:**

\[ r_B \leftarrow r_A \mid (\text{IMM16 : 0x0000}) \]

**Assembler Syntax:**

`orhi rB, rA, IMM16`

**Example:**

`orhi r6, r7, 100`

**Description:**

Calculates the bitwise logical OR of \( r_A \) and \( (\text{IMM16 : 0x0000}) \) and stores the result in \( r_B \).

**Instruction Type:**

\( I \)

**Instruction Fields:**

- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( r_A \)
- \( B \) = Register index of operand \( r_B \)
- \( \text{IMM16} \) = 16-bit signed immediate value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>IMM16</td>
<td>0x34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ori**

**bitwise logical or immediate**

**Operation:**
rB ← rA | (0x0000 : IMM16)

**Assembler Syntax:**
ori rB, rA, IMM16

**Example:**
ori r6, r7, 100

**Description:**
Calculates the bitwise logical OR of rA and (0x0000 : IMM16) and stores the result in rB.

**Instruction Type:**
I

**Instruction Fields:**
- A = Register index of operand rA
- B = Register index of operand rB
- IMM16 = 16-bit unsigned immediate value

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x14 |
Operation: \( rC \leftarrow \text{ctlN} \)

Assembler Syntax: `rdctl rC, ctlN`

Example: `rdctl r3, ctl31`

Description: Reads the value contained in control register \( \text{ctlN} \) and writes it to register \( rC \).

Instruction Type: `R`

Instruction Fields:
- \( C \) = Register index of operand \( rC \)
- \( N \) = Control register index of operand \( \text{ctlN} \)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0  | 0  | C  | 0x26 | N  | 0x3a |
**ret**

**return from subroutine**

**Operation:** \( PC \leftarrow ra \)

**Assembler Syntax:** `ret`

**Example:** `ret`

**Description:** Transfers execution to the address in ra.

**Usage:** Any subroutine called by `call` or `callr` must use `ret` to return.

**Instruction Type:** R

**Instruction Fields:** None

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0x1f</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x05</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Operation: \( rC \leftarrow rA \) rotated left \( rB_{4..0} \) bit positions

Assembler Syntax: \( \text{rol } rC, rA, rB \)

Example: \( \text{rol } r6, r7, r8 \)

Description: Rotates \( rA \) left by the number of bits specified in \( rB_{4..0} \) and stores the result in \( rC \). The bits that shift out of the register rotate into the least-significant bit positions. Bits 31–5 of \( rB \) are ignored.

Instruction Type: R

Instruction Fields:
- \( A = \) Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B = \) Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( C = \) Register index of operand \( rC \)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x03 | 0  | 0x3a |
roli
rotate left immediate

Operation: \( rC \leftarrow rA \) rotated left IMM5 bit positions

Assembler Syntax: \texttt{roli rC, rA, IMM5}

Example: \texttt{roli r6, r7, 3}

Description: Rotates \( rA \) left by the number of bits specified in IMM5 and stores the result in \( rC \). The bits that shift out of the register rotate into the least-significant bit positions.

Usage: In addition to the rotate-left operation, \texttt{roli} can be used to implement a rotate-right operation. Rotating left by \((32 - \text{IMM5})\) bits is the equivalent of rotating right by \text{IMM5} bits.

Instruction Type: \( R \)

Instruction Fields:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c}
31 & 30 & 29 & 28 & 27 & 26 \\
25 & 24 & 23 & 22 & 21 & 20 \\
19 & 18 & 17 & 16 & 15 & 14 \\
13 & 12 & 11 & 10 & 9 & 8 \\
7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \\
1 & 0 & A & 0 & C & 0x02 \\
& & & & IMUM & 0x3a \\
\end{array}
\]

A = Register index of operand \( rA \)
C = Register index of operand \( rC \)
IMM5 = 5-bit unsigned immediate value
**Operation:**
\[ r_C \leftarrow r_A \text{ rotated right } r_B_{4..0} \text{ bit positions} \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
\[ \text{ror } r_C, r_A, r_B \]

**Example:**
\[ \text{ror } r_6, r_7, r_8 \]

**Description:**
Rotates \( r_A \) right by the number of bits specified in \( r_B_{4..0} \) and stores the result in \( r_C \). The bits that shift out of the register rotate into the most-significant bit positions. Bits 31–5 of \( r_B \) are ignored.

**Instruction Type:**
\[ R \]

**Instruction Fields:**
- \( A = \) Register index of operand \( r_A \)
- \( B = \) Register index of operand \( r_B \)
- \( C = \) Register index of operand \( r_C \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x0B</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sll

shift left logical

Operation: \[ rC \leftarrow rA \ll (rB_{4..0}) \]

Assembler Syntax: `sll rC, rA, rB`

Example: `sll r6, r7, r8`

Description: Shifts \( rA \) left by the number of bits specified in \( rB_{4..0} \) (inserting zeroes), and then stores the result in \( rC \). \texttt{sll} performs the \( \ll \) operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: \texttt{R}

Instruction Fields:
- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B \) = Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( C \) = Register index of operand \( rC \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>0x13</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0x3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
slli
shift left logical immediate

Operation: \( rC \leftarrow rA \ll IMM5 \)

Assembler Syntax: `slli rC, rA, IMM5`

Example: `slli r6, r7, 3`

Description: Shifts \( rA \) left by the number of bits specified in \( IMM5 \) (inserting zeroes), and then stores the result in \( rC \).

Usage: `slli` performs the \( \ll \) operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: `R`

Instruction Fields:
- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( C \) = Register index of operand \( rC \)
- \( IMM5 \) = 5-bit unsigned immediate value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x12</td>
<td>IMM5</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
sra

shift right arithmetic

Operation: \( rC \leftarrow (\text{signed}) \, rA \gg ((\text{unsigned}) \, rB_{4..0}) \)

Assembler Syntax: `sra rC, rA, rB`

Example: `sra r6, r7, r8`

Description: Shifts \( rA \) right by the number of bits specified in \( rB_{4..0} \) (duplicating the sign bit), and then stores the result in \( rC \). Bits 31–5 are ignored.

Usage: `sra` performs the signed >> operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: \( R \)

Instruction Fields:

- \( A = \) Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B = \) Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( C = \) Register index of operand \( rC \)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x3b | 0   | 0x3a |
**srai**

**Operation:**

\[ rC \leftarrow (\text{signed}) \ rA \gg ((\text{unsigned}) \ IMM5) \]

**Assembler Syntax:**

`srai rC, rA, IMM5`

**Example:**

`srai r6, r7, 3`

**Description:**

Shifts \( rA \) right by the number of bits specified in IMM5 (duplicating the sign bit), and then stores the result in \( rC \).

**Usage:**

`srai` performs the signed >> operation of the C programming language.

**Instruction Type:**

R

**Instruction Fields:**

A = Register index of operand \( rA \)

C = Register index of operand \( rC \)

IMM5 = 5-bit unsigned immediate value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>31</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>27</th>
<th>26</th>
<th>25</th>
<th>24</th>
<th>23</th>
<th>22</th>
<th>21</th>
<th>20</th>
<th>19</th>
<th>18</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td>IMM5</td>
<td>0x3a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
srl
shift right logical

Operation: \[ r_C \leftarrow (\text{unsigned}) \ r_A \gg ((\text{unsigned}) \ r_B_{4..0}) \]

Assembler Syntax: `srl r_C, r_A, r_B`

Example: `srl r_6, r_7, r_8`

Description: Shifts `r_A` right by the number of bits specified in `r_B_{4..0}` (inserting zeroes), and then stores the result in `r_C`. Bits 31–5 are ignored.

Usage: `srl` performs the unsigned `>>` operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: `R`

Instruction Fields: A = Register index of operand `r_A`
B = Register index of operand `r_B`
C = Register index of operand `r_C`

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x1b | 0  | 0x3a |
srli
shift right logical immediate

Operation: \( r_C \leftarrow \text{(unsigned) } r_A >> ((\text{unsigned}) \ IMM_5) \)

Assembler Syntax: \( \text{srli } r_C, r_A, \ IMM_5 \)

Example: \( \text{srli } r_6, r_7, 3 \)

Description: Shifts \( r_A \) right by the number of bits specified in \( \IMM_5 \) (inserting zeroes), and then stores the result in \( r_C \).

Usage: \( \text{srli} \) performs the unsigned >> operation of the C programming language.

Instruction Type: \( R \)

Instruction Fields:
- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( r_A \)
- \( C \) = Register index of operand \( r_C \)
- \( \IMM_5 \) = 5-bit unsigned immediate value

```
| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | 0  | C  | 0x1a | IMM5 | 0x3a |
```
**stb / stbio**

store byte to memory or I/O peripheral

**Operation:**

Mem8[rA + σ(IMM16)] ← rB₇:₀

**Assembler Syntax:**

- stb rB, byte_offset(rA)
- stbio rB, byte_offset(rA)

**Example:**

- stb r6, 100(r5)

**Description:**

Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of rA and the instruction's signed 16-bit immediate value. Stores the low byte of rB to the memory byte specified by the effective address.

**Usage:**

In processors with a data cache, this instruction may not generate an Avalon bus cycle to non-cache data memory immediately. Use the stbio instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, stbio bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon data transfer. In processors without a data cache, stbio acts like stb.

**Instruction Type:**

I

**Instruction Fields:**

- A = Register index of operand rA
- B = Register index of operand rB
- IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

**Instruction format for** stb

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x05 |

**Instruction format for** stbio

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x25 |
sth / sthio

store halfword to memory or I/O peripheral

**Operation:**
Mem16[rA + σ(IMM16)] ← rB_{15..0}

**Assembler Syntax:**
sth rB, byte_offset(rA)
sthio rB, byte_offset(rA)

**Example:**
sth r6, 100(r5)

**Description:** Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of rA and the instruction's signed 16-bit immediate value. Stores the low halfword of rB to the memory location specified by the effective byte address. The effective byte address must be halfword aligned. If the byte address is not a multiple of 2, the operation is undefined.

**Usage:**
In processors with a data cache, this instruction may not generate an Avalon data transfer immediately. Use the sthio instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, sthio bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon data transfer. In processors without a data cache, sthio acts like sth.

**Instruction Type:** I

**Instruction Fields:**
A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

| 31  | 30  | 29  | 28  | 27  | 26  | 25  | 24  | 23  | 22  | 21  | 20  | 19  | 18  | 17  | 16  | 15  | 14  | 13  | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| A   | B   | IMM16 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

Instruction format for sth

| 31  | 30  | 29  | 28  | 27  | 26  | 25  | 24  | 23  | 22  | 21  | 20  | 19  | 18  | 17  | 16  | 15  | 14  | 13  | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| A   | B   | IMM16 |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |

Instruction format for sthio
**stw / stwio**

**store word to memory or I/O peripheral**

**Operation:**  
Mem32[rA + σ(IMM16)] ← rB

**Assembler Syntax:**  
stw rB, byte_offset(rA)  
stwio rB, byte_offset(rA)

**Example:**  
stw r6, 100(r5)

**Description:**  
Computes the effective byte address specified by the sum of rA and the instruction’s signed 16-bit immediate value. Stores rB to the memory location specified by the effective byte address. The effective byte address must be word aligned. If the byte address is not a multiple of 4, the operation is undefined.

**Usage:**  
In processors with a data cache, this instruction may not generate an Avalon data transfer immediately. Use the stwio instruction for peripheral I/O. In processors with a data cache, stwio bypasses the cache and is guaranteed to generate an Avalon bus cycle. In processors without a data cache, stwio acts like stw.

**Instruction Type:** I

**Instruction Fields:**  
A = Register index of operand rA  
B = Register index of operand rB  
IMM16 = 16-bit signed immediate value

| 31  | 30  | 29  | 28  | 27  | 26  | 25  | 24  | 23  | 22  | 21  | 20  | 19  | 18  | 17  | 16  | 15  | 14  | 13  | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| A   | B   | IMM16 | 0x15 |

Instruction format for stw

| 31  | 30  | 29  | 28  | 27  | 26  | 25  | 24  | 23  | 22  | 21  | 20  | 19  | 18  | 17  | 16  | 15  | 14  | 13  | 12  | 11  | 10  | 9   | 8   | 7   | 6   | 5   | 4   | 3   | 2   | 1   | 0   |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| A   | B   | IMM16 | 0x35 |

Instruction format for stwio
Operation: \[ r_C \leftarrow r_A - r_B \]

Assembler Syntax: \texttt{sub }r_C, r_A, r_B

Example: \texttt{sub }r_6, r_7, r_8

Description: Subtract \( r_B \) from \( r_A \) and store the result in \( r_C \).

Usage: **Carry Detection (unsigned operands):**

The carry bit indicates an unsigned overflow. Before or after a \texttt{sub} operation, a carry out of the MSB can be detected by checking whether the first operand is less than the second operand. The carry bit can be written to a register, or a conditional branch can be taken based on the carry condition. Both cases are shown below.

\[
\texttt{sub } r_C, r_A, r_B ; \quad \text{The original sub operation (optional)}
\]
\[
\texttt{cmpltu } r_D, r_A, r_B ; \quad r_D \text{ is written with the carry bit}
\]

\[
\texttt{sub } r_C, r_A, r_B ; \quad \text{The original sub operation (optional)}
\]
\[
\texttt{bltu } r_A, r_B, \text{label} ; \quad \text{Branch if carry was generated}
\]

**Overflow Detection (signed operands):**

Detect overflow of signed subtraction by comparing the sign of the difference that is written to \( r_C \) with the signs of the operands. If \( r_A \) and \( r_B \) have different signs, and the sign of \( r_C \) is different than the sign of \( r_A \), an overflow occurred. The overflow condition can control a conditional branch, as shown below.

\[
\texttt{sub } r_C, r_A, r_B ; \quad \text{The original sub operation}
\]
\[
\texttt{xor } r_D, r_A, r_B ; \quad \text{Compare signs of } r_A \text{ and } r_B
\]
\[
\texttt{xor } r_E, r_A, r_C ; \quad \text{Compare signs of } r_A \text{ and } r_C
\]
\[
\text{and } r_D, r_D, r_E ; \quad \text{Combine comparisons}
\]
\[
\texttt{blt } r_D, r_0, \text{label} ; \quad \text{Branch if overflow occurred}
\]

Instruction Type: \(R\)

Instruction Fields: 
- \(A\) = Register index of operand \(r_A\)
- \(B\) = Register index of operand \(r_B\)
- \(C\) = Register index of operand \(r_C\)

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x39 | 0 | 0x3a |
**subi**
subtract immediate

**Operation:**  
$rB ← rA − σ(\text{IMMED})$

**Assembler Syntax:**  
`subi rB, rA, IMMED`

**Example:**  
`subi r8, r8, 4`

**Description:**  
Sign-extends the immediate value IMMED to 32 bits, subtracts it from the value of rA and then stores the result in rB.

**Usage:**  
The maximum allowed value of IMMED is 32768. The minimum allowed value is −32767.

**Pseudoinstruction:**  
`subi` is implemented as `addi rB, rA, -IMMED`
**Sync**

**memory synchronization**

**Operation:** None

**Assembler Syntax:** `sync`

**Example:** `sync`

**Description:** Forces all pending memory accesses to complete before allowing execution of subsequent instructions. In processor cores that support in-order memory accesses only, this instruction performs no operation.

**Instruction Type:** R

**Instruction Fields:** None

```
  31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
  0 0 0 0x36 0 0x3a
```
trap

Operation:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{estatus} & \leftarrow \text{status} \\
\text{PIE} & \leftarrow 0 \\
U & \leftarrow 0 \\
\text{ea} & \leftarrow \text{PC} + 4 \\
\text{PC} & \leftarrow \text{exception handler address}
\end{align*}\]

Assembler Syntax: trap

Example: trap

Description:
Saves the address of the next instruction in register \( \text{ea} \), saves the contents of the \( \text{status} \) register in \( \text{estatus} \), disables interrupts, and transfers execution to the exception handler. The address of the exception handler is specified at system generation time.

Usage:
To return from the exception handler, execute an \textit{eret} instruction.

Instruction Type: R

Instruction Fields: None

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 0  | 0  | 0x1d| 0x2d| 0  | 0  | 0x3a|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
**wrctl**

**write to control register**

**Operation:**
\[ \text{ctlN} \leftarrow rA \]

**Assembler Syntax:**
\[ \text{wrctl ctlN, rA} \]

**Example:**
\[ \text{wrctl ctl6, r3} \]

**Description:**
Writes the value contained in register rA to the control register ctlN.

**Instruction Type:**
R

**Instruction Fields:**
- A = Register index of operand rA
- N = Control register index of operand ctlN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>0x2e</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>0x3a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

31 30 29 28 27 26 25 24 23 22 21 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0
XOR
bitwise logical exclusive or

Operation: \( rC \leftarrow rA \oplus rB \)
Assembler Syntax: \( \text{xor } rC, rA, rB \)
Example: \( \text{xor } r6, r7, r8 \)
Description: Calculates the bitwise logical exclusive XOR of \( rA \) and \( rB \) and stores the result in \( rC \).

Instruction Type: R
Instruction Fields:

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | C  | 0x1e | 0 | 0x3a |
xorhi

bitwise logical exclusive or immediate into high halfword

Operation: \[ rB \leftarrow rA ^ {\text{IMM16 : 0x0000}} \]

Assembler Syntax: xorhi rB, rA, IMM16

Example: xorhi r6, r7, 100

Description: Calculates the bitwise logical exclusive XOR of rA and (IMM16 : 0x0000) and stores the result in rB.

Instruction Type: I

Instruction Fields:

| 31 | 30 | 29 | 28 | 27 | 26 | 25 | 24 | 23 | 22 | 21 | 20 | 19 | 18 | 17 | 16 | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5  | 4  | 3  | 2  | 1  | 0  |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| A  | B  | IMM16 | 0x3c |

A = Register index of operand rA
B = Register index of operand rB
IMM16 = 16-bit unsigned immediate value
**xori**

**bitwise logical exclusive or immediate**

**Operation:** \( rB \leftarrow rA \oplus (0x0000 : IMM16) \)

**Assembler Syntax:** `xori rB, rA, IMM16`

**Example:** `xori r6, r7, 100`

**Description:** Calculates the bitwise logical exclusive or of \( rA \) and \((0x0000 : IMM16)\) and stores the result in \( rB \).

**Instruction Type:** I

**Instruction Fields:**
- \( A \) = Register index of operand \( rA \)
- \( B \) = Register index of operand \( rB \)
- \( IMM16 \) = 16-bit unsigned immediate value

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>IMM16</th>
<th>0x1c</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8–6 shows the revision history for this document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date &amp; Document Version</th>
<th>Changes Made</th>
<th>Summary of Changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>November 2006, v6.1.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2006, v6.0.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>October 2005, v5.1.0</td>
<td>● Correction to the blt instruction.</td>
<td>● Added U bit operation for break and trap instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● Added U bit operation for break and trap instructions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>July 2005, v5.0.1</td>
<td>● new flushda instruction.</td>
<td>● Instruction Opcode table updated with flushda instruction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● flushd instruction updated.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>● Instruction Opcode table updated with flushda instruction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2005, v5.0.0</td>
<td>No change from previous release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>December 2004, v1.2</td>
<td>● break instruction update.</td>
<td>● srl instruction correction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>September 2004, v1.1</td>
<td>Updates for Nios II 1.01 release.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May 2004, v1.0</td>
<td>First publication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>